



# **MX310 Series**

---

## **User's Guide**

**June 2012**

**[www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com)**

---

Machine type(s):

7015

Model(s):

270

# Contents

- Safety information.....6**
- Learning about the printer.....8**
  - Finding information about the printer.....8
  - Selecting a location for the printer.....9
  - Printer configurations.....10
  - Understanding the basic functions of the scanner.....11
  - Using the ADF and scanner glass.....12
  - Using the printer control panel.....13
  - Understanding the colors of the indicator and Sleep button lights.....13
- Additional printer setup.....15**
  - Installing internal options.....15
  - Installing hardware options.....19
  - Attaching cables.....22
  - Setting up the printer software.....23
  - Networking.....24
  - Verifying printer setup.....29
- Loading paper and specialty media.....30**
  - Setting the paper size and type.....30
  - Configuring Universal paper settings.....30
  - Loading trays.....30
  - Loading the multipurpose feeder.....35
  - Linking and unlinking trays.....39
- Paper and specialty media guide.....42**
  - Paper guidelines.....42
  - Supported paper sizes, types, and weights.....45
  - Using specialty media.....47
  - Storing paper.....49
- Printing.....51**
  - Printing a document.....51
  - Printing confidential and other held jobs.....52

Printing information pages.....54  
 Canceling a print job.....54

**Copying.....56**

Making copies.....56  
 Copying photos.....57  
 Copying on specialty media.....57  
 Customizing copy settings.....59  
 Placing information on copies.....64  
 Canceling a copy job.....65  
 Understanding the copy options.....65

**E-mailing.....68**

Setting up the printer to e-mail.....68  
 Creating an e-mail shortcut.....69  
 E-mailing a document.....69  
 Canceling an e-mail.....70

**Faxing.....71**

Setting up the printer to fax.....71  
 Sending a fax.....85  
 Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server.....87  
 Customizing fax settings.....88  
 Canceling an outgoing fax.....89  
 Holding and forwarding faxes.....90  
 Understanding the fax options.....91

**Scanning.....93**

Scanning to an FTP address.....93  
 Scanning to a computer.....95

**Understanding printer menus.....97**

Menus list.....97  
 Paper menu.....98  
 Reports menu.....107  
 Network/Ports menu.....108  
 Security menu.....114  
 Settings menu.....116

---

Help menu.....	144
<b>Saving money and the environment.....</b>	<b>146</b>
Saving paper and toner.....	146
Saving energy.....	147
Recycling.....	150
<b>Securing the printer.....</b>	<b>152</b>
Statement of Volatility.....	152
Erasing volatile memory.....	152
Erasing non-volatile memory.....	152
Finding printer security information.....	153
<b>Maintaining the printer.....</b>	<b>154</b>
Cleaning the printer parts.....	154
Checking the status of parts and supplies.....	156
Estimated number of remaining pages.....	156
Ordering supplies.....	157
Storing supplies.....	159
Replacing supplies.....	159
Moving the printer.....	163
<b>Managing the printer.....</b>	<b>165</b>
Finding advanced networking and administrator information.....	165
Checking the virtual display.....	165
Setting up e-mail alerts.....	165
Viewing reports.....	165
Configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server.....	166
Restoring factory default settings.....	167
<b>Clearing jams.....</b>	<b>168</b>
Avoiding jams.....	168
Understanding jam messages and locations.....	169
[x]-page jam, open front door. [20y.xx].....	171
[x]-page jam, open rear door. [20y.xx].....	174
[x]-page jam, clear standard bin. [20y.xx].....	175
[x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [23y.xx].....	176
[x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24y.xx].....	177

[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder. [25y.xx].....178  
[x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx].....179

**Troubleshooting.....181**

Understanding printer messages.....181  
Solving printer problems.....195  
Solving print problems.....200  
Solving copy problems.....224  
Solving fax problems.....227  
Solving scanner problems.....233  
Embedded Web Server does not open.....237  
Contacting customer support.....238

**Notices.....240**

Product information.....240  
Edition notice.....240  
Power consumption.....244

**Index.....256**

## Safety information

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a service representative.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Use only the telecommunications (RJ-11) cord provided with this product or a 26 AWG or larger replacement when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity tray and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- If an optional tray is installed, then remove it from the printer. To remove the optional tray, slide the latch on the right side of the tray toward the front of the tray until it *clicks* into place.
- Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.
- Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Before setting up the printer, make sure there is adequate clearance around it.

**SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

# Learning about the printer

## Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
<p>Initial setup instructions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connecting the printer</li> <li>• Installing the printer software</li> </ul>	<p>Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available on the Lexmark Web site at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a>.</p>
<p>Additional setup and instructions for using the printer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting and storing paper and specialty media</li> <li>• Loading paper</li> <li>• Configuring printer settings</li> <li>• Viewing and printing documents and photos</li> <li>• Setting up and using the printer software</li> <li>• Configuring the printer on a network</li> <li>• Caring for and maintaining the printer</li> <li>• Troubleshooting and solving problems</li> </ul>	<p><i>User's Guide</i> and <i>Quick Reference Guide</i>—The guides are available on the <i>Software and Documentation</i> CD. For updates, visit our Web site at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a>.</p>
<p>Instructions for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connecting the printer to an Ethernet network</li> <li>• Troubleshooting printer connection problems</li> </ul>	<p><i>Networking Guide</i>—Open the <i>Software and Documentation</i> CD, and then look for <i>Printer and Software Documentation</i> under the Pubs folder. From the list of publications, click the <b>Networking Guide</b> link.</p>
<p>Help using the printer software</p>	<p>Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click <b>Help</b>.</p> <p>Click  to view context-sensitive information.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Help is automatically installed with the printer software.</li> <li>• The printer software is located in the printer program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.</li> </ul>

What are you looking for?	Find it here
<p>The latest supplemental information, updates, and customer support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation</li> <li>• Driver downloads</li> <li>• Live chat support</li> <li>• E-mail support</li> <li>• Voice support</li> </ul>	<p>Lexmark Support Web site—  <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> <p>Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the Support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.</p> <p>Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact customer support so that they may serve you faster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Machine Type number</li> <li>• Serial number</li> <li>• Date purchased</li> <li>• Store where purchased</li> </ul>
<p>Warranty information</p>	<p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>In the US</b>—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a>.</li> <li>• <b>In other countries and regions</b>—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.</li> </ul>

## Selecting a location for the printer

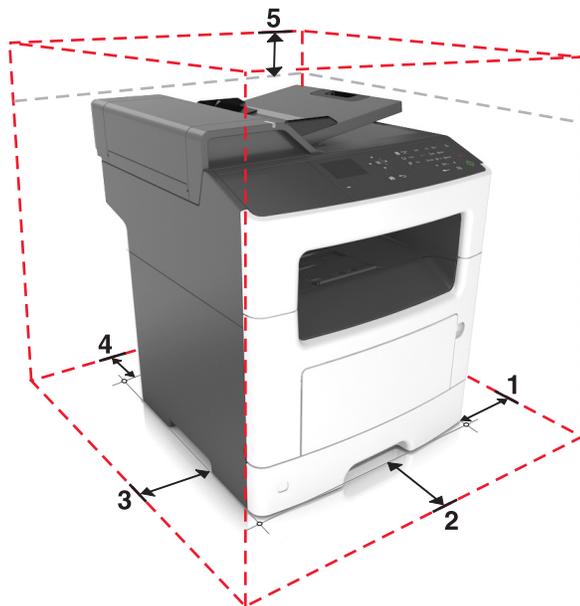
 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any options, then leave enough room for them also. It is important to:

- Set up the printer near a properly grounded and easily accessible electrical outlet.
- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  - Clean, dry, and free of dust.
  - Away from stray staples and paper clips.
  - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators.
  - Free from direct sunlight and humidity extremes.
- Observe the recommended temperatures and avoid fluctuations:

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)
Storage temperature	-40 to 60°C (-40 to 140°F)

- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



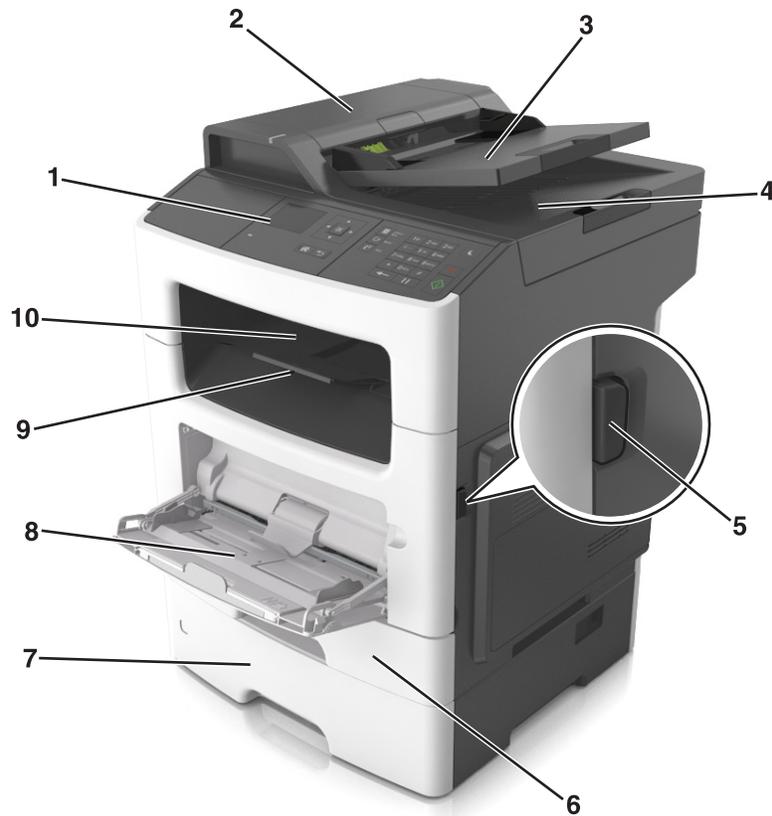
1	Right side	30.48 cm (12 in.)
2	Front	50.8 cm (20 in.)
3	Left side	20.32 cm (8 in.)
4	Rear	20.32 cm (8 in.)
5	Top	54 cm (21 in.)

## Printer configurations

**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity tray and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

You can configure your printer by adding one optional 250- or 550-sheet tray. For instructions on installing the optional tray, see “Installing optional trays” on page 19.



1	Printer control panel
2	Automatic document feeder (ADF)
3	ADF tray
4	ADF bin
5	Front door release button
6	Standard 250-sheet tray
7	Optional 250- or 550-sheet tray
8	50-sheet multipurpose feeder
9	Paper stop
10	Standard bin

## Understanding the basic functions of the scanner

- Make quick copies or set the printer to perform specific copy jobs.
- Send a fax using the printer control panel.
- Send a fax to multiple fax destinations at the same time.
- Scan documents and send them to your computer, an e-mail address, or an FTP destination.
- Scan documents and send them to another printer (PDF through an FTP).

## Using the ADF and scanner glass

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

### Using the ADF

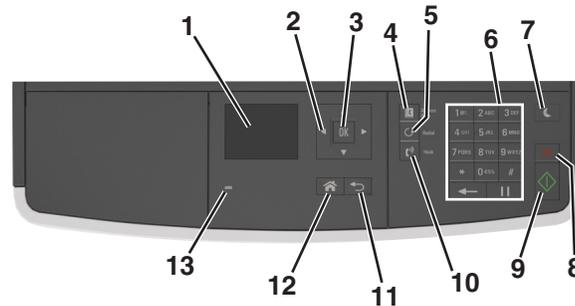
- Load the document into the ADF tray faceup, short edge first.
- Load up to 50 sheets of plain paper into the ADF tray.
- Scan sizes from 105 x 148 mm (4.1 x 5.8 inches) wide to 216 x 368 mm (8.5 x 14.5 inches) long.
- Scan media weights from 52 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup> (14–32 lb).
- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

### Using the scanner glass

When using the scanner glass:

- Place the document facedown on the scanner glass in the corner with the green arrow.
- Scan or copy documents up to 216 x 296.9 mm (8.5 x 11.69 inches).
- Copy books up to 25.3 mm (1 inch) thick.

## Using the printer control panel



	Use the	To
1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View the printer status and messages.</li> <li>Set up and operate the printer.</li> </ul>
2	Arrow buttons	Scroll up and down or left and right.
3	Select button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select menu options.</li> <li>Save settings.</li> </ul>
4	Address book button	View all the stored addresses.
5	Redial button	View the last number dialed.
6	Keypad	Enter numbers, letters, or symbols.
7	Sleep button	Enable Sleep mode or Hibernate mode. Do the following to wake the printer from Sleep mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press any hard button.</li> <li>Open a door or cover.</li> <li>Send a print job from the computer.</li> <li>Perform a power-on reset using the main power switch.</li> </ul>
8	Cancel button	Cancel all printer activity.
9	Start button	Start a job, depending on which mode is selected.
10	Fax button	Send faxes.
11	Back button	Return to the previous screen.
12	Home button	Go to the home screen.
13	Indicator light	Check the status of the printer.

## Understanding the colors of the indicator and Sleep button lights

The colors of the indicator and Sleep button lights on the printer control panel signify a certain printer status or condition.

**Indicator light color and its corresponding printer status**

Indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off or in Hibernate mode.
Blinking green	The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.
Solid green	The printer is on, but idle.
Blinking red	The printer requires user intervention.

**Sleep button light color and its corresponding printer status**

Sleep button light	Printer status
Off	The printer is idle or in Ready state.
Solid amber	The printer is in Sleep mode.
Blinking amber	The printer is waking from or entering Hibernate mode.
Blinking amber for 0.1 second, then goes completely off for 1.9 seconds in pulsing pattern	The printer is in Hibernate mode.

# Additional printer setup

## Installing internal options

**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

## Available internal options

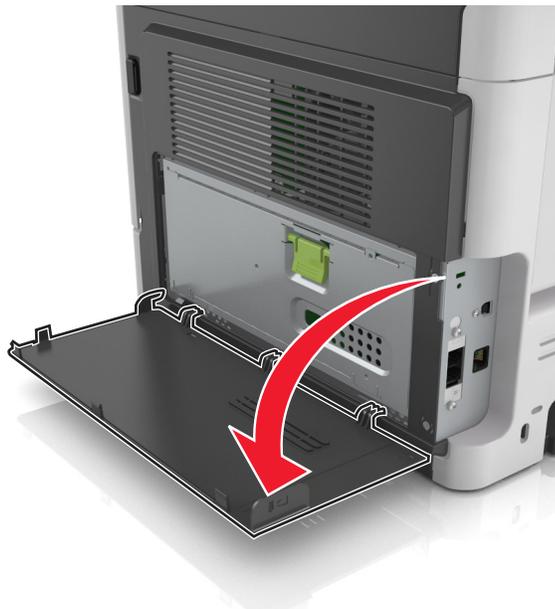
### Memory cards

- Flash memory
- Fonts

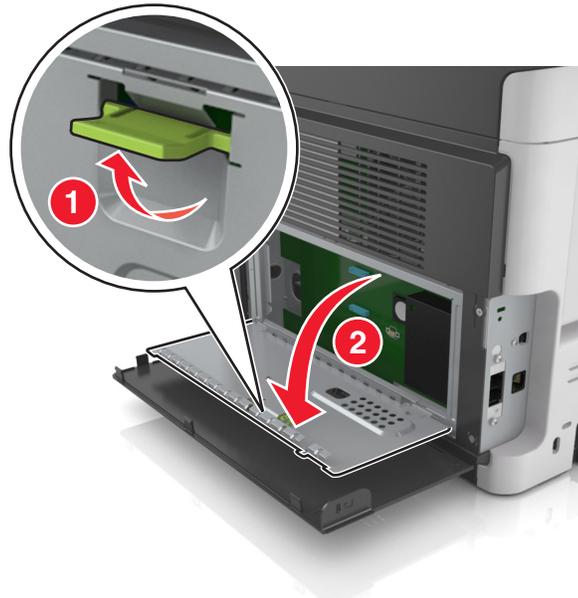
## Accessing the controller board

**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

- 1 Open the controller board access door.

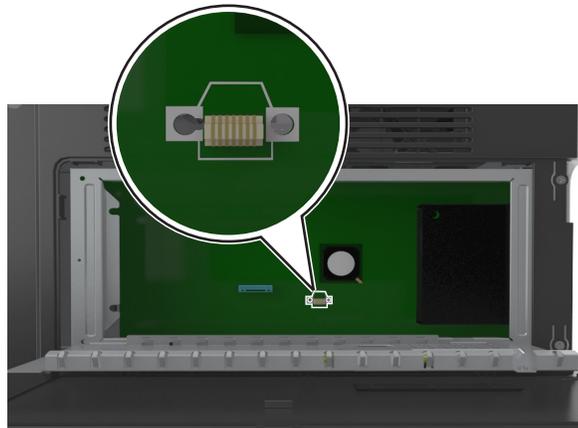


- 2 Open the controller board shield using the green handle.



- 3 Use the following illustration to locate the option card connector.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.



- 4 Close the shield, and then the access door.



## Installing an optional card

**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

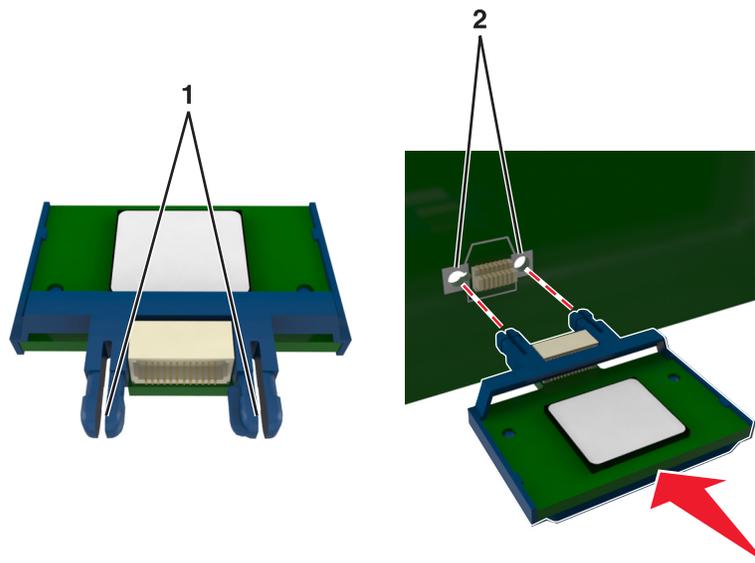
**1** Access the controller board.

For more information, see “Accessing the controller board” on page 15.

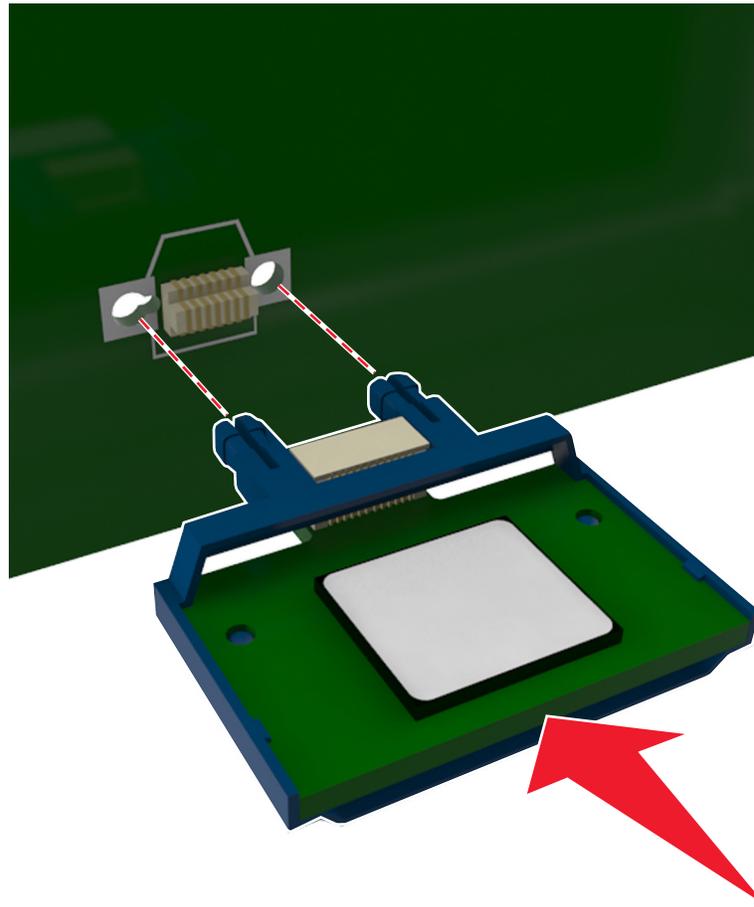
**2** Unpack the optional card.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

**3** Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins (1) on the card with the holes (2) on the controller board.



- 4 Push the card firmly into place as shown in the illustration.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Improper installation of the card may cause damage to the card and the controller board.

**Note:** The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flushed against the controller board.

- 5 Close the controller board shield, and then the controller board access door.

**Note:** When the printer software and any hardware options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 23.

## Installing hardware options

### Order of installation

-  **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.
-  **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.
-  **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity tray and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

Install the printer and any hardware options you have purchased in the following order:

- Printer stand
- Optional 250- or 550-sheet tray
- Printer

For more information on installing a printer stand, optional 250- or 550-sheet tray, or spacer, see the setup sheet that came with the option.

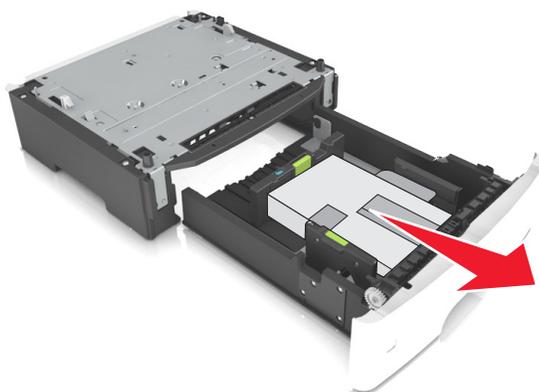
### Installing optional trays

-  **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.
-  **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.
-  **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity tray and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

- 1 Turn off the printer using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.

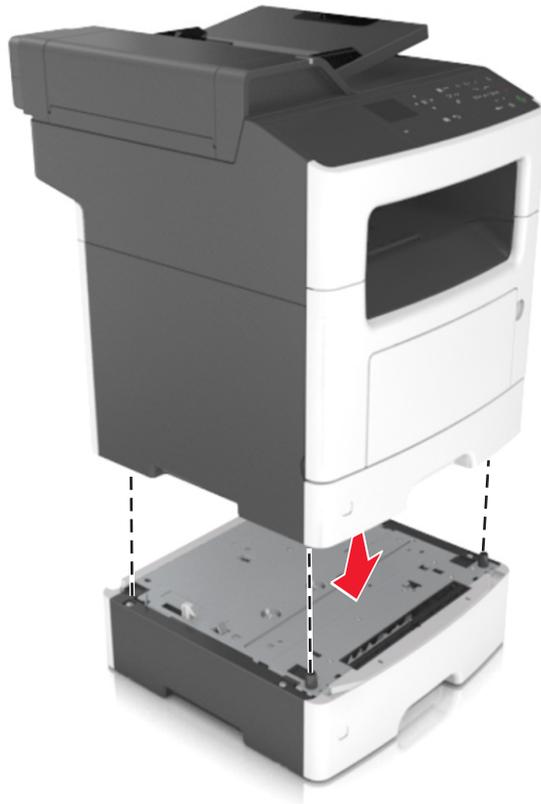


- 2 Unpack the tray, and then remove all packing material.
- 3 Pull out the tray from the base.



- 4 Remove any packing material from inside the tray.
- 5 Insert the tray into the base.
- 6 Place the tray near the printer.
- 7 Align the printer with the tray, and then slowly lower the printer into place.

**Note:** Optional trays lock together when stacked.



**8** Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.



**Notes:**

- When the printer software and any hardware options are installed, you may need to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 23.
- To uninstall the optional trays, slide the latch on the right side of the printer toward the front of the printer until it *clicks* into place, and then remove stacked trays one at a time from the top to the bottom.

## Attaching cables

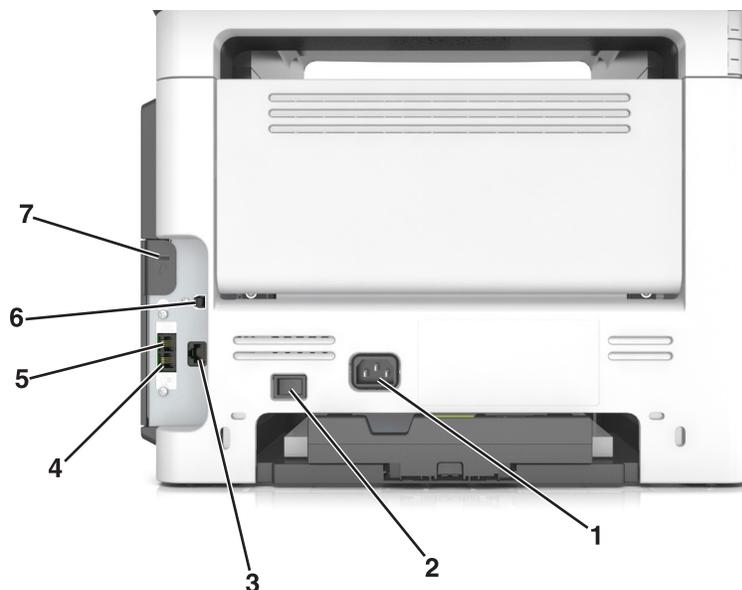
**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or to the network using an Ethernet cable.

Make sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable with the Ethernet port

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. Loss of data or a malfunction can occur.



	Use the	To
1	Printer power cord socket	Connect the printer to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
2	Power switch	Turn the printer on or off.
3	Ethernet port	Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.
4	EXT port	Connect additional devices (telephone or answering machine) to the printer and the telephone line. Use this port if you do not have a dedicated fax line for the printer and if this connection method is supported in your country or region. <b>Note:</b> Remove the plug to access the port.
5	LINE port	Connect the printer to an active telephone line through a standard wall jack (RJ-11), DSL filter, or VoIP adapter, or any other adapter that allows you to access the telephone line to send and receive faxes.
6	USB printer port	Connect the printer to a computer.
7	Security slot	Attach a lock that will secure the printer in place.

## Setting up the printer software

### Installing the printer software

**Note:** If you installed the printer software on the computer before but need to reinstall the software, then uninstall the current software first.

#### For Windows users

1 Close all open software programs.

2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type `D:\setup.exe`, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

3 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

#### For Macintosh users

1 Close all open applications.

2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.

3 Double-click the software installer package, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**Note:** To take advantage of the full features of your printer, select the custom install option, and then select all packages listed.

#### Using the Internet

1 Go to the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

2 Navigate to:

**SUPPORT & DOWNLOADS** > select your printer > select your operating system

3 Download the printer driver, and then install the printer software.

### Updating available options in the printer driver

When any hardware options are installed, you may need to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for use.

#### For Windows users

1 Open the printers folder.

- a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type `control printers`.

- c** Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
- 2** Select the printer.
- 3** Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties** (Windows 7) or **Properties** (earlier versions).
- 4** Click the **Configuration** tab.
- 5** Do either of the following:
  - Click **Update Now - Ask Printer**.
  - Under Configuration Options, manually add any installed hardware options.
- 6** Click **Apply**.

### For Macintosh users

- 1** From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
  - **System Preferences > Print & Scan > select your printer > Options & Supplies > Driver**
  - **System Preferences > Print & Fax > select your printer > Options & Supplies > Driver**
- 2** Add any installed hardware options, and then click **OK**.

## Networking

### Notes:

- Purchase a MarkNet™ N8352 wireless network adapter first before setting up the printer on a wireless network. For information on installing the wireless network adapter, see the setup sheet that came with the adapter.
- A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), and WPA2 are types of security used on a network.

### Preparing to set up the printer on an Ethernet network

To configure your printer to connect to an Ethernet network, organize the following information before you begin:

**Note:** If your network automatically assigns IP addresses to computers and printers, continue on to installing the printer.

- A valid, unique IP address for the printer to use on the network
- The network gateway
- The network mask
- A nickname for the printer (optional)

**Note:** A printer nickname can make it easier for you to identify your printer on the network. You can choose to use the default printer nickname, or assign a name that is easier for you to remember.

You will need an Ethernet cable to connect the printer to the network and an available port where the printer can physically connect to the network. Use a new network cable when possible to avoid potential problems caused by a damaged cable.

## Installing the printer on an Ethernet network

### For Windows users

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
  - b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**, where **D** is the letter of the CD or DVD drive.
  - c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
- 2 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
  - 3 Select **Ethernet connection**, and then click **Continue**.
  - 4 Attach the Ethernet cable when instructed to do so.
  - 5 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Continue**.  
**Note:** If the configured printer does not appear in the list, then click **Modify Search**.
  - 6 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

### For Macintosh users

- 1 Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.
- 2 Obtain the printer IP address either:
  - From the printer control panel
  - From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
  - By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

**Note:** You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

- 3 Install the printer driver on the computer.
  - a Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.
  - b Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
  - c Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.
  - d From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.
  - e Type the user password, and then click **OK**.  
All the necessary applications are installed on the computer.
  - f Click **Close** when installation is complete.
- 4 Add the printer.
  - For IP printing:
    - a From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
      - **System Preferences > Print & Scan**
      - **System Preferences > Print & Fax**
    - b Click **+**.
    - c Click the **IP** tab.
    - d Type the printer IP address in the address field, and then click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

**Notes:**

- Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.
- This feature is supported only in Mac OS X version 10.5.
- a** From the Apple menu, navigate to:  
**System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- b** Click +, and then navigate to:  
**AppleTalk > select your printer > Add**

## Preparing to set up the printer on a wireless network

**Notes:**

- Make sure your wireless network adapter is installed in your printer and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.
- Make sure your access point (wireless router) is turned on and is working properly.

Make sure you have the following information before setting up the printer on a wireless network:

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode is either infrastructure or ad hoc.
- **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to automatic for infrastructure networks. Some ad hoc networks will also require the automatic setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.
- **Security Method**—There are four basic options for Security Method:
  - WEP key  
If your network uses more than one WEP key, then enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the default WEP transmit key.
  - WPA or WPA2 preshared key or passphrase  
WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.
  - 802.1X—RADIUS  
If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network, then you may need the following:
    - Authentication type
    - Inner authentication type
    - 802.1X user name and password
    - Certificates
  - No security  
If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.  
**Note:** We do not recommend using an unsecured wireless network.

**Notes:**

- If you do not know the SSID of the network that your computer is connected to, then launch the wireless utility of the computer network adapter, and then look for the network name. If you cannot find the SSID or the

security information for your network, then see the documentation that came with the access point, or contact your system support person.

- To find the WPA/WPA2 preshared key or passphrase for the wireless network, see the documentation that came with the access point, see the Embedded Web Server associated with the access point, or consult your system support person.

## Connecting the printer using the Wireless Setup Wizard

Before you begin, make sure that:

- A wireless network adapter is installed in the printer and is working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.
- An Ethernet cable is disconnected from the printer.
- Active NIC is set to Auto. To set this to Auto, navigate to:

 > Settings >  > Network/Ports >  > Active NIC >  > Auto > 

**Note:** Make sure to turn off the printer, then wait for at least five seconds, and then turn the printer back on.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > Settings >  > Network/Ports >  > Network [x] >  > Network [x] Setup >  > Wireless >  > Wireless Connection Setup > 

- 2 Select a wireless connection setup.

Use	To
<b>Search for networks</b>	Show available wireless connections. <b>Note:</b> This menu item shows all broadcast secured or unsecured SSIDs.
<b>Enter a network name</b>	Manually type the SSID. <b>Note:</b> Make sure to type the correct SSID.
<b>Wi-Fi Protected Setup</b>	Connect the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup.

- 3 Press , and then follow the instructions on the printer display.

## Connecting the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The access point (wireless router) is WPS certified.
- A wireless network adapter is installed in the printer and is working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.

## Using the Push Button Configuration (PBC) method

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Network/Ports** >  > **Network [x]** >  > **Network [x] Setup** >  > **Wireless** >  > **Wi-Fi Protected Setup** >  > **Start Push Button Method** > 

2 Follow the instructions on the printer display.

## Using the Personal Identification Number (PIN) method

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Network/Ports** >  > **Network [x]** > **Wireless** >  > **Wi-Fi Protected Setup** >  > **Start PIN Method** > 

2 Copy the eight-digit WPS PIN.

3 Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address of your access point in the address bar.

### Notes:

- The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

4 Access the WPS settings.

5 Enter the eight-digit PIN, and then save the setting.

## Connecting the printer to a wireless network using the Embedded Web Server

Before you begin, make sure that:

- Your printer is connected temporarily to an Ethernet network.
- A wireless network adapter is installed in your printer and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer control panel. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings** > **Network/Ports** > **Wireless**.

3 Modify the settings to match the settings of your access point (wireless router).

**Note:** Make sure to enter the correct SSID, security method, preshared key or passphrase, network mode, and channel.

4 Click **Submit**.

- 5 Turn off the printer, and then disconnect the Ethernet cable. Then wait for at least five seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- 6 To verify if your printer is connected to the network, print a network setup page. Then in the Network Card [x] section, see if the status is Connected.

## Verifying printer setup

When all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option, and then install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer has networking support, then use this page to verify that the network connection is working. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

### Printing a menu settings page

Print a menu settings page to view the current menu settings and to verify if the printer options are installed correctly.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > Settings > Reports >  > Menu Settings Page > 

**Note:** If you have not changed any menu settings, then the menu settings page lists all the factory default settings. Settings saved from the menus replace the factory default settings as *user default settings*. A user default setting remains in effect until you access the menu again, select another value, and save it.

### Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > Settings > Reports >  > Network Setup Page > 

**Note:** If an optional internal print server is installed, then **Print Network [x] Setup Page** appears.

- 2 Check the first section of the network setup page, and confirm that the status is **Connected**.

If the status is **Not Connected**, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult your system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

## Loading paper and specialty media

The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 168 and “Storing paper” on page 49.

### Setting the paper size and type

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Paper Menu** >  > **Paper Size/Type** > 

- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to select the tray or feeder, and then press .
- 3 Press the up or down arrow button to select the paper size, and then press .
- 4 Press the up or down arrow button to select the paper type, and then press  to change the settings.

### Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal paper size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus.

#### Notes:

- The smallest supported Universal paper size is 76.2 x 76.2 mm (3 x 3 inches), and is supported only from the multipurpose feeder.
- The largest supported Universal paper size is 215.9 x 359.92 mm (8.5 x 14.17 inches), and is supported from all paper sources.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Paper Menu** >  > **Universal Setup** >  > **Units of Measure** >  > select a unit of measure > 

- 2 Select **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height**, and then press .
- 3 Press the left or right arrow button to change the setting, and then press .

### Loading trays

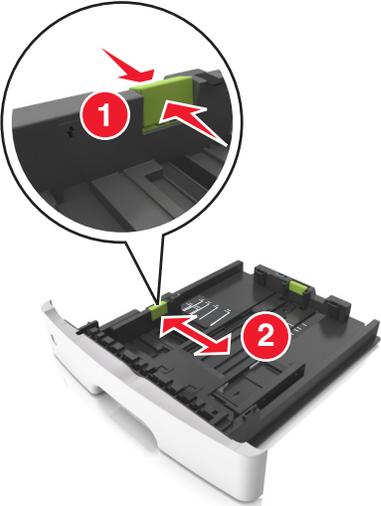
 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all trays closed until needed.

- 1 Pull out the tray completely.

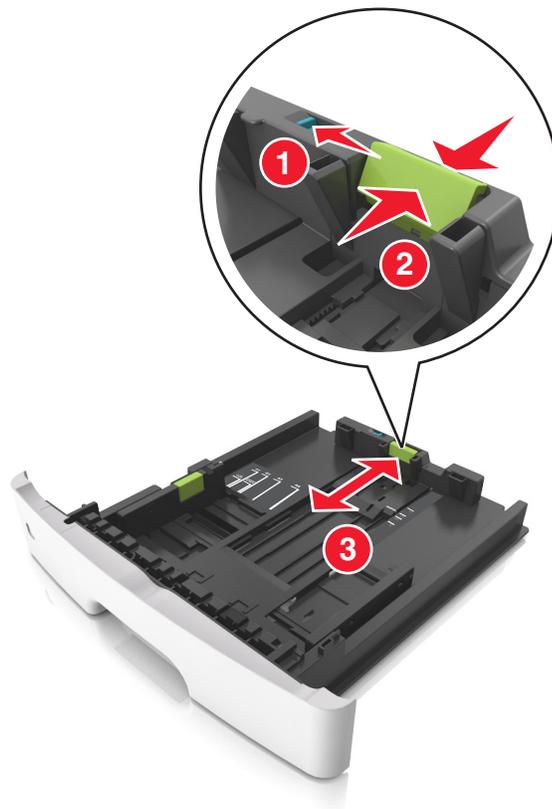
**Note:** Do not remove trays while a job prints or while **Busy** appears on the printer display. Doing so may cause a jam.



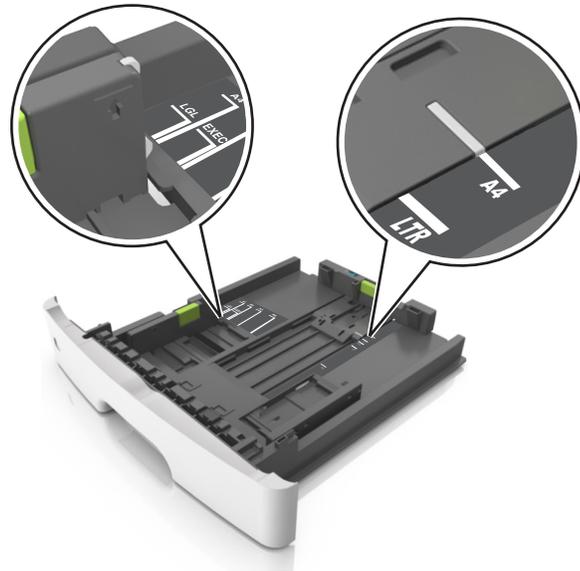
2 Squeeze, and then slide the width guide tab to the correct position for the size of the paper you are loading.



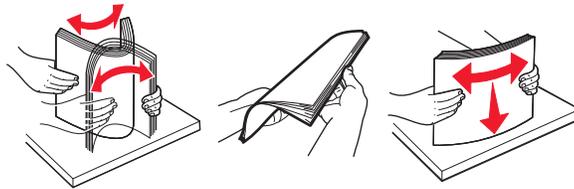
- 3 Unlock the length guide. Squeeze, and then slide the length guide tab to the correct position for the size of the paper you are loading.

**Notes:**

- For some paper sizes like letter, legal, and A4, squeeze and slide the length guide tab backward to accommodate their length.
- When loading legal-size paper, the length guide extends beyond the base leaving the paper exposed to dust. To protect the paper from dust, you can purchase a dust cover separately. For more information, contact customer support.
- If you are loading A6-size paper in the standard tray, then squeeze and then slide the length guide tab toward the center of the tray to the A6-size position.
- Make sure the width and length guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the bottom of the tray.



- 4 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



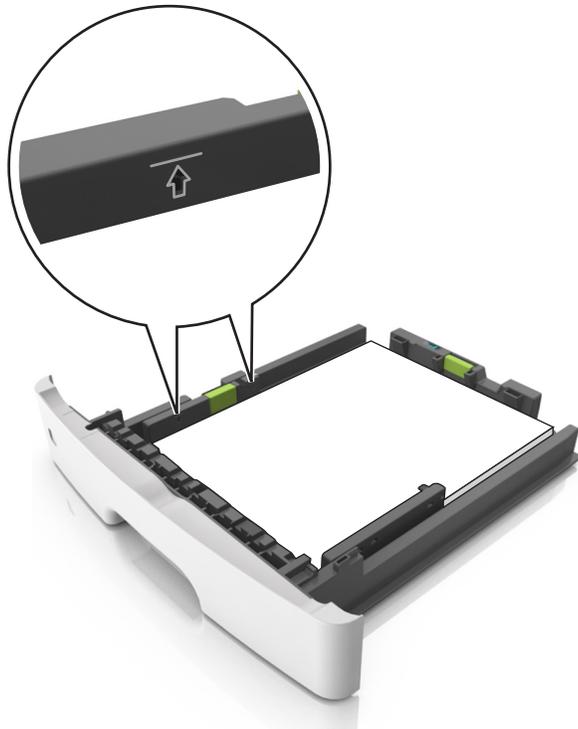
- 5 Load the paper stack.



**Notes:**

- Load with the printable side facedown when using recycled or preprinted paper.
- Load prepunched paper with the holes on the top edge toward the front of the tray.

- Load letterhead facedown, with the top edge of the sheet toward the front of the tray. For two-sided printing, load letterhead faceup with the bottom edge of the sheet toward the front of the tray.
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator located on the side of the width guide.



**6** Insert the tray.



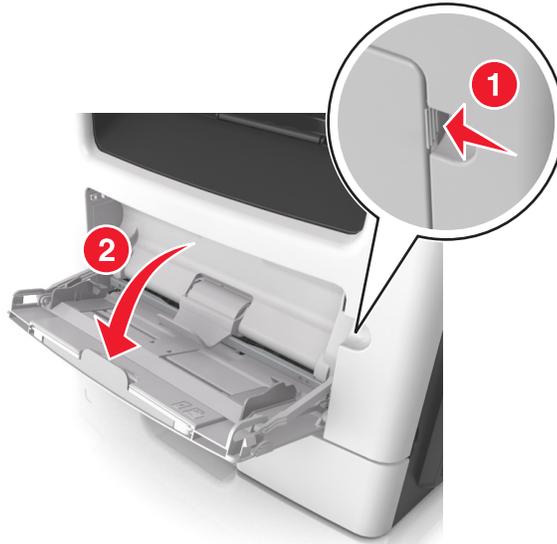
**7** From the printer control panel, set the paper size and paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

## Loading the multipurpose feeder

Use the multipurpose feeder when printing on different paper sizes and types or specialty media, such as card stock, transparencies, paper labels, and envelopes. You can also use it for single-page print jobs on letterhead.

- 1 Open the multipurpose feeder.



- a Pull the multipurpose feeder extender.



- b** Pull the extender gently so that the multipurpose feeder is fully extended and open.

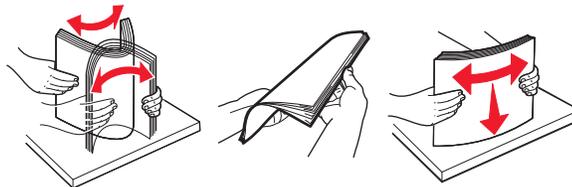


- 2** Squeeze the tab on the left width guide, and then move the guides for the paper you are loading.



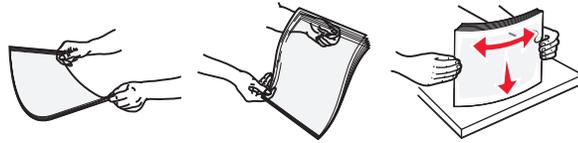
- 3** Prepare the paper or specialty media for loading.

- Flex sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- Hold transparencies by the edges. Flex the stack of transparencies back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

**Note:** Avoid touching the printable side of the transparencies. Be careful not to scratch them.



- Flex the stack of envelopes back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



#### 4 Load the paper or specialty media.

##### Notes:

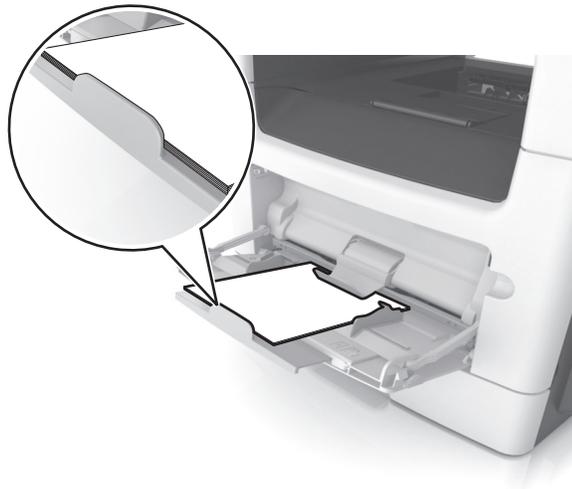
- Do not force paper or specialty media into the multipurpose feeder.
- Make sure the paper or specialty media is below the maximum paper fill indicator located on the paper guides. Overfilling may cause paper jams.



- Load paper, transparencies, and card stock with the recommended printable side faceup and the top edge entering the printer first. For more information on loading transparencies, see the packaging that the transparencies came in.



**Note:** When loading A6-size paper, make sure the multipurpose feeder extender rests lightly against the edge of the paper so that the last few sheets of paper remain in place.



- Load letterhead faceup with the top edge entering the printer first. For two-sided (duplex) printing, load letterhead facedown with the bottom edge entering the printer first.



- Load envelopes with the flap on the left side facedown.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

- 5 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper or specialty media loaded in the multipurpose feeder.

## Linking and unlinking trays

When one linked tray becomes empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. We recommend giving all custom paper, such as letterhead and different colored plain papers, a different custom type name so that the trays they are in do not automatically link.

### Linking and unlinking trays

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu**.

- 3 Change the paper size and type settings for the trays you are linking.

- To link trays, make sure the paper size and type for the tray match that of the other tray.
- To unlink trays, make sure the paper size or type for the tray does *not* match that of the other tray.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

**Note:** You can also change the paper size and type settings using the printer control panel. For more information, see “Setting the paper size and type” on page 30.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Paper loaded in the tray should match the paper type name assigned in the printer. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. Printing issues may occur if settings are not properly configured.

## Creating a custom name for a paper type

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Names**.
- 3 Select a custom name, and then type a new custom paper type name.
- 4 Click **Submit**.
- 5 Click **Custom Types**, and then verify if the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Paper Menu** >  > **Custom Names**

- 2 Select a custom name, and then type a new custom paper type name.
- 3 Press .
- 4 Press **Custom Types**, and then verify if the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

## Assigning a custom paper type name

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Names**.
- 3 Type a name for the paper type, and then click **Submit**.
- 4 Select a custom type, and then verify that the correct paper type is associated with the custom name.

**Note:** Plain Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

## Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Paper Menu** >  > **Custom Names**

- 2 Type a name for the paper type, and then press .

## Assigning a custom paper type

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Types**.
- 3 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type.

**Note:** Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Paper Menu** >  > **Custom Types**

- 2 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type.

**Note:** Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

- 3 Press .

# Paper and specialty media guide

Additional information for printing on speciality media may be found in the *Card Stock and Label Guide* available at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Paper guidelines

Selecting the correct paper or specialty media reduces printing problems. For the best print quality, try a sample of the paper or specialty media before buying large quantities.

## Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

### Weight

The standard printer trays can automatically feed paper weights up to 90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (24-lb) bond grain long paper. The optional trays can automatically feed paper weights up to 120-g/m<sup>2</sup> (32-lb) bond grain long paper. The multipurpose feeder can automatically feed paper weights up to 163-g/m<sup>2</sup> (43-lb) bond grain long paper. Paper lighter than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75-g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb) bond grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 inches), it is recommended to use 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (24 lb) or heavier paper.

**Note:** Two-sided printing is supported only for 60–90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–24-lb) bond paper.

### Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

### Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; smoothness between 150–250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

### Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Condition paper before printing by storing it in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24–48 hours before printing. Extend the time to several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

## Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60–90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–24-lb) bond paper, grain long paper is recommended.

## Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

## Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) less than ±2.5 mm (±0.10 inch), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms:

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

## Selecting paper

Using the appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid paper jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

## Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for 60 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 24 lb) weight paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.

- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must be able to withstand temperatures up to 230°C (446°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions. Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not. When in doubt, contact the paper supplier.

Preprinted papers such as letterhead must be able to withstand temperatures up to 230°C (446°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.

## Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers. In 1998, Lexmark presented to the US government a study demonstrating that recycled paper produced by major mills in the US fed as well as non-recycled paper. However, no blanket statement can be made that *all* recycled paper will feed well.

Lexmark consistently tests its printers with recycled paper (20–100% post-consumer waste) and a variety of test paper from around the world, using chamber tests for different temperature and humidity conditions. Lexmark has found no reason to discourage the use of today's recycled office papers, but generally the following property guidelines apply to recycled paper.

- Low moisture content (4–5%)
- Suitable smoothness (100–200 Sheffield units, or 140–350 Bendtsen units, European)

**Note:** Some much smoother papers (such as premium 24 lb laser papers, 50–90 Sheffield units) and much rougher papers (such as premium cotton papers, 200–300 Sheffield units) have been engineered to work very well in laser printers, despite surface texture. Before using these types of paper, consult your paper supplier.

- Suitable sheet-to-sheet coefficient of friction (0.4–0.6)
- Sufficient bending resistance in the direction of feed

Recycled paper, paper of lower weight (<60 g/m<sup>2</sup> [16 lb bond]) and/or lower caliper (<3.8 mils [0.1 mm]), and paper that is cut grain-short for portrait (or short-edge) fed printers may have lower bending resistance than is required for reliable paper feeding. Before using these types of paper for laser (electrophotographic) printing, consult your paper supplier. Remember that these are general guidelines only and that paper meeting these guidelines may still cause paper feeding problems in any laser printer (for example, if the paper curls excessively under normal printing conditions).

## Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

For information on card stock and labels, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide*.

### Supported paper sizes

Paper size and dimension	Standard 250-sheet tray	Optional 250- or 550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	ADF	Scanner glass	Duplex mode
<b>Business card</b>	X	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>3 x 5 in.</b>	X	X	✓	X	✓	X
<b>4 x 6 in.</b>	X	X	✓	X	✓	X
<b>A4</b> 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>A5</b> 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X
<b>A6</b> 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	✓	X	✓	✓	✓	X
<b>JIS B5</b> 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X
<b>Letter</b> 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Legal</b> 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Executive</b> 184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X
<b>Oficio (México)</b> 215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	✓
<b>Folio</b> 215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	✓

\* To support two-sided (duplex) printing, the Universal width must be between 76.2 mm (3 in.) and 215.9 mm (8.5 in.); the Universal length must be between 76.2 mm (3 in.) and 359.92 mm (14.17 in.).

Paper size and dimension	Standard 250-sheet tray	Optional 250- or 550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	ADF	Scanner glass	Duplex mode
<b>Statement</b> 139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X
<b>Universal*</b> 76.2 x 76.2 mm to 215.9 x 359.92 mm (3 x 3 in. to 8.5 x 14.17 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch)</b> 98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
<b>9 Envelope</b> 98.4 x 226.1 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
<b>10 Envelope</b> 104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
<b>DL Envelope</b> 110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
<b>C5 Envelope</b> 162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
<b>B5 Envelope</b> 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
<b>Other Envelope</b> 85.7 x 165 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.375 x 6.50 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	✓	X	X	X
* To support two-sided (duplex) printing, the Universal width must be between 76.2 mm (3 in.) and 215.9 mm (8.5 in.); the Universal length must be between 76.2 mm (3 in.) and 359.92 mm (14.17 in.).						

## Supported paper types and weights

The standard tray supports 60–90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–24-lb) paper weights. The optional tray supports 60–120-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–32-lb) paper weights. The multipurpose feeder supports 60–163-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–43-lb) paper weights.

Paper type	250- or 550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplex mode	ADF	Scanner glass
Plain paper	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Card stock	X	✓	X	✓	✓
Transparencies	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓	X	✓	✓
Recycled	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Paper labels <sup>2</sup>	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Bond	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Envelope <sup>3</sup>	X	✓	X	X	✓
Rough envelope	X	✓	X	X	✓
Letterhead	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Preprinted	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Colored paper	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Light paper	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Heavy paper	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Rough/Cotton	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Custom Type [x]	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

<sup>1</sup> Transparencies are supported only in 250-sheet tray.

<sup>2</sup> One-sided paper labels designed for laser printers are supported for occasional use. We recommend printing only up to 20 pages of paper labels per month. Vinyl, pharmacy, and two-sided labels are not supported.

<sup>3</sup> Use envelopes that lie flat when individually placed on a table facedown.

## Using specialty media

### Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser printers.
- Print samples on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, flex, fan, and straighten the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead. For information on how to load letterhead, see:
  - “Loading trays” on page 30
  - “Loading the multipurpose feeder” on page 35

## Tips on using transparencies

- Print a test page on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Feed transparencies from the standard tray, or the multipurpose feeder.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers. Transparencies must be able to withstand temperatures up to 185°C (365°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.  
**Note:** If the transparency weight is set to Heavy and the transparency texture is set to Rough in the Paper menu, then transparencies can be printed at a temperature up to 195°C (383°F).
- Avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies to prevent print quality problems.
- Before loading transparencies, flex, fan, and straighten the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.

## Tips on using envelopes

Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure that the envelopes can withstand temperatures up to 230°C (446°F) without sealing, wrinkling, curling excessively, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (24-lb bond) paper or 25% cotton. All-cotton envelopes must not exceed 70-g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) weight.
- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
  - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars
  - Have an interlocking design
  - Have postage stamps attached
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
  - Have bent corners
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.

**Note:** A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

## Tips on using labels

Print samples on the labels being considered for use before buying large quantities.

**Note:** Use only paper label sheets. Vinyl, pharmacy, and two-sided labels are not supported.

For more information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to verify that:
  - The labels can withstand temperatures up to 240°C (464°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
  - Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats can withstand up to 25-psi (172-kPa) pressure without delaminating, oozing around the edges, or releasing hazardous fumes.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and toner cartridge warranties.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inch) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Make sure the adhesive backing does not reach to the edge of the sheet. Zone coating of the adhesive should be at least 1 mm (0.04 inch) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates the printer and could void the warranty.
- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, then remove a 2-mm (0.06-inch) strip on the leading and driver edge, and then use a non-oozing adhesive.
- Portrait orientation is recommended, especially when printing bar codes.

## Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly impact print quality. Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.

When printing on card stock:

- Make sure the Paper Type is Card Stock.
- Select the appropriate Paper Texture setting.
- Be aware that preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper handling problems.
- Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure that the card stock can withstand temperatures up to 240°C (464°F) without releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use preprinted card stock manufactured with chemicals that may contaminate the printer. Preprinting introduces semi-liquid and volatile components into the printer.
- Use grain short card stock when possible.

## Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18–24°C (65–75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.

- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

# Printing

## Printing a document

### Printing a document

- 1 From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper type and size to match the paper loaded.
- 2 Send the print job:

#### For Windows users

- a With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- b Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- c Adjust the settings, if necessary.
- d Click **OK > Print**.

#### For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings in the Page Setup dialog if necessary:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Page Setup**.
  - 2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the paper loaded.
  - 3 Click **OK**.
- b Customize the settings in the Page Setup dialog if necessary:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
  - 2 From the Print dialog and pop-up menus adjust the settings if necessary.  
**Note:** To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the paper loaded, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.
  - 3 Click **Print**.

## Adjusting toner darkness

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address of the printer in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**.
- 3 Adjust the toner darkness, and then click **Submit**.

### Using the printer control panel

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > Settings >  > Print Settings >  > Quality Menu >  > Toner Darkness

2 Adjust the toner darkness, and then press .

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

### Storing print jobs in the printer

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > Settings >  > Security >  > Confidential Print > select the print job type

Print job type	Description
Max Invalid PIN	Limits the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered. <b>Note:</b> When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name and PIN are deleted.
Confidential Job Expiration	Lets you hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the printer control panel. <b>Note:</b> The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Repeat Job Expiration	Lets you print <i>and</i> store print jobs in the printer memory for reprinting.
Verify Job Expiration	Lets you print one copy of a print job while the printer holds the remaining copies. It allows you to examine if the first copy is satisfactory. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory once all copies are printed.
Reserve Job Expiration	Lets you store print jobs for printing at a later time. The print jobs are held until deleted from the Held Jobs menu.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.</li> <li>• You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.</li> <li>• All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called <i>held jobs</i>.</li> </ul>	

2 Press .

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

**Note:** Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are held in the printer until you choose to delete them.

### For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- 2 Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 3 Click **Print and Hold**.
- 4 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 5 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 6 From the printer control panel, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > Confidential Jobs > enter the PIN > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**

### For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
- 3 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 5 From the printer control panel, release the print job:
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > Confidential Jobs > enter the PIN > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**

## Modifying confidential print settings

**Note:** This feature is available only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Configuration** > **Other Settings** tab > **Security** > **Confidential Print Setup**.

3 Modify the settings:

- Set a maximum number of PIN entry attempts. When a user exceeds a specific number of PIN entry attempts, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.
- Set an expiration time for confidential print jobs. When a user has not printed the jobs within the specified time, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.

4 Save the modified settings.

## Printing information pages

### Printing a font sample list

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Reports** >  > **Print Fonts**

2 Press the up or down arrow button to select the font setting.

3 Press .

**Note:** The PPDS fonts appear only when the PPDS data stream is activated.

## Canceling a print job

### Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

From the printer control panel, press . When a list of print jobs appears, select the job to cancel, and then press .

### Canceling a print job from the computer

#### For Windows users

1 Open the printers folder.

- a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

2 Double-click the printer icon.

**3** Select the print job you want to cancel.

**4** Click **Delete**.

### **For Macintosh users**

**1** From the Apple Menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **System Preferences > Print & Scan > select a printer > Open Print Queue**
- **System Preferences > Print & Fax > select a printer > Open Print Queue**

**2** From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel, and then click **Delete**.

# Copying

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

## Making copies

### Making a quick copy

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

**Note:** To avoid a cropped image, make sure the size of the original document and the size of the copy paper are the same.

- 3 From the printer control panel, press .

### Copying using the ADF

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 Adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, use the keypad to enter the number of copies, and then press .

## Copying using the scanner glass

1 Place an original document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

2 From the printer control panel, use the keypad to enter the number of copies, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to scan another document, then place the next document on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

3 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Copying photos

1 Place a photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

2 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Content Type** > **Photo**

3 From the Content Source menu, choose a setting that best describes the original photo you are copying, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another photo, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Copying on specialty media

### Copying on transparencies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Copy from** > select the size of the original document

4 Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > select the tray containing the transparencies >  > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

5 If there are no trays that contain transparencies, then do the following:

a Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > **Manual Feeder** >  > select the size of the transparencies >  > **Transparency** > 

b Load transparencies into the multipurpose feeder, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

6 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Copying on letterhead

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

### Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Copy from** > select the size of the original document

4 Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > select the tray containing the letterhead >  > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

5 If there are no trays that contain letterhead, then do the following:

a Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > **Manual Feeder** >  > select the size of the letterhead > **Letterhead**

b Place the letterhead faceup, top edge first into the multipurpose feeder, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

6 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Customizing copy settings

### Copying to a different size

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Copy from** > select the size of the original document

4 Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > select a new size for the copy > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

5 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

### Making copies using paper from a selected tray

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Copy from** > select the size of the original document

4 Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > select the tray containing the paper size and type you want to use >  > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

5 If there are no trays that contain the paper size and type you want to use, then do the following:

a Navigate to:

**Copy to** >  > **Manual Feeder** >  > select the paper size >  > select the paper type > 

b Load the size and type of paper into the multipurpose feeder, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

6 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing)

1 Load a document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Sides (Duplex)** > select a duplex option > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

**Notes:**

- The first number refers to the original document. The second number refers to the copy. For example, select **2-sided to 2-sided** if you have two-sided original documents and you want two-sided copies.
- If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Reducing or enlarging copies

Copies can be scaled from 25% to 400% of the original document size.

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Scale** > adjust the scale setting > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Making a copy lighter or darker

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Darkness** > adjust the darkness setting > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Adjusting copy quality

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Content Type** > select the content type of the original document

4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to one of the following:

- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text and graphics or photos.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.

5 Press the up or down arrow button until **Content Source** appears, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to one of the following:

- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Press**—The original document is from an offset press.
- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from a film.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

6 Select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

7 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Collating copies

If you print multiple copies of a document, then you can choose to print each copy as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated	Not collated
	

To select a Collate setting:

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Collate** > select the collate setting you want > select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad > 

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Placing separator sheets between copies

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Separator Sheets**

- 4 Select **Between Copies**, **Between Jobs**, **Between Pages**, or **Off**.

- 5 Select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

- 6 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

To save paper, you can copy either two or four consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto a single sheet of paper.

**Notes:**

- Make sure the paper size is set to letter, legal, A4, or JIS B5.
- The copy size must be set to 100%.

**1** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

**2** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

**3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Paper Saver** > select the setting that you want

**4** Select **Off**, **2-up Portrait**, **2-up Landscape**, **4-up Portrait**, or **4-up Landscape**.

**5** Select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad, and then press .

**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

**6** Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Placing information on copies

### Placing an overlay message on each page

**1** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

**2** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

**3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Copy** >  > **Overlay** > select an overlay message you want

**4** Select **Off**, **Confidential**, **Copy**, **Draft**, **Urgent**, or **Custom**.

- 5 Select the number of copies or enter a number on the keypad, and then press .  
**Note:** If you want to copy another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .
- 6 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Canceling a copy job

### Canceling a copy job from the printer control panel

From the printer control panel, press .

## Understanding the copy options

### Copies

This option lets you set the number of copies to be printed.

### Copy from

This option opens a screen where you can select the paper size of the original document.

- To scroll to the paper size that matches the original document, press the left or right arrow button, and then press .
- To copy an original document that contains mixed paper sizes with the same width, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Mixed Sizes**, and then press .
- To set the printer to automatically detect the size of the original document, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Auto Size Sense**, and then press .

### Copy to

This option lets you select the paper size and type on which your copies will be printed.

- To scroll to the paper size and type that matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder, press the left or right arrow button, and then press .
- If the settings for “Copy from” and “Copy to” are different, then the printer automatically adjusts the Scale setting to accommodate the difference.

- If the paper type or size you want to use is not loaded in one of the trays, then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Manual Feeder**, press , and then manually load the paper in the manual feeder or multipurpose feeder.
- To match each copy to the paper size of the original document, set “Copy to” to Auto Size Match. If a matching paper size is not in one of the trays, then **Paper size not found** appears and prompts to load a paper in a tray, manual feeder, or multipurpose feeder.

## Scale

This option lets you scale the document from 25% to 400% of the original document size. You can also set automatic scaling.

- When copying to a different paper size, such as from legal-size to letter-size paper, set the “Copy from” and “Copy to” paper sizes automatically to scale the scan image to fit the size of the paper onto which you are copying.
- To decrease or increase the value by 1%, press the left or right arrow button on the printer control panel. To make a continuous decrease or increase in value, press and hold the button for two or more seconds.

## Darkness

This option lets you adjust how light or dark the copies are in relation to the original document.

## Sides (Duplex)

This option lets you make one- or two-sided copies from one- or two-sided original documents.

## Collate

This option keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies of the document.

## Content Type

This option lets you set the original document type.

Select from the following content types:

- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.

## Content Source

This option lets you set the original document source.

Select from the following content sources:

- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.

- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from a film.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

## Advanced Duplex

This option lets you specify the document orientation, whether documents are one-sided or two-sided, and how documents are bound.

## Overlay

This option lets you create a watermark (or message) that overlays the content of your copy. You can choose from Confidential, Copy, Draft, Urgent, and Custom. You can type a custom message in the "Enter the Custom Text Overlay and press OK" field. The message will appear, faintly, in large print across each page.

## Separator Sheets

This option lets you place a blank sheet of paper between copies, prints, pages, print jobs or copy jobs. The separator sheets can be drawn from a tray that contains a type or color of paper that is different from the paper your copies are printed on.

## Paper Saver

This option lets you print two or more pages of an original document on the same page. Paper Saver is also called *N-up* printing where *N* stands for the number of pages. For example, 2-up would print two pages of your document on a single page, and 4-up would print four pages of your document on a single page.

## E-mailing

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

You can use the printer to e-mail scanned documents to one or more recipients. There are three ways to send an e-mail from the printer. You can type the e-mail address, use a shortcut number, or use the address book.

## Setting up the printer to e-mail

### Setting up the e-mail function

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > E-mail/FTP Settings > E-mail Settings**.

- 3 Enter the appropriate information, and then click **Submit**.

### Configuring e-mail settings

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > E-mail/FTP Settings > E-mail Settings**.
- 3 Enter the appropriate information, and then click **Submit**.

## Creating an e-mail shortcut

### Creating an e-mail shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Manage Shortcuts > E-mail Shortcut Setup**.
- 3 Type a name for the shortcut, and then enter the e-mail address.

**Note:** If you are entering multiple addresses, then separate each address with a comma (,).

- 4 Adjust the scan settings, if necessary.
- 5 Enter a shortcut number, and then click **Add**.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

## E-mailing a document

### Sending an e-mail using a shortcut number

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 Press #, then enter the shortcut number using the keypad, and then press .
- 4 Press .

### Sending an e-mail using the address book

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is properly loaded.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **E-mail Shortcuts** >  > select the name of the recipient > 

## Canceling an e-mail

From the printer control panel, press .

# Faxing

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

## Setting up the printer to fax

**⚡ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**Notes:**

- The following connection methods are applicable only in select countries or regions.
- During the initial printer setup, clear the fax function check box and any other function you plan to set up later, and then press **Continue**.
- The indicator light may blink red if the fax function is enabled and not fully set up.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.



## Initial fax setup

Many countries and regions require outgoing faxes to contain the following information in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission: fax name (identification of the business, other entity, or individual sending the message) and fax number (telephone number of the sending fax machine, business, other entity, or individual).

To enter your fax setup information, use the printer control panel, or use your browser to access the Embedded Web Server, and then open the Settings menu.

**Note:** If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then you must use the printer control panel to enter your fax setup information.

### Using the printer control panel for fax setup

When the printer is turned on for the first time, a series of start-up screens appear. If the printer has fax capabilities, then the Fax Name or Station Name and Fax Number or Station Number screens appear:

- 1 When **Fax Name** or **Station Name** appears, type the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes, and then press



- 2 When **Fax Number** or **Station Number** appears, enter the printer fax number, and then press



### Using the Embedded Web Server for fax setup

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

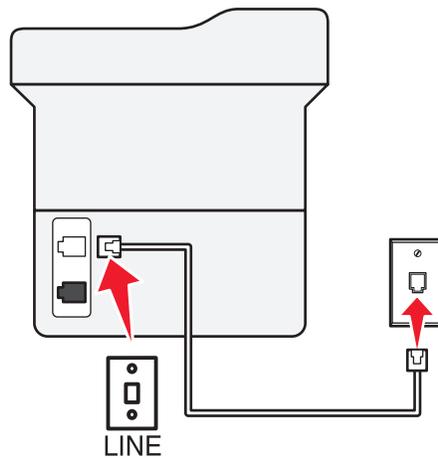
- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup**.
- 3 In the Fax Settings menu, type the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes in the Fax Name or Station Name field.
- 4 In the Fax Number or Station Number field, enter the printer fax number.
- 5 Click **Submit**.

## Choosing a fax connection

### Scenario 1: Standard telephone line

#### Setup 1: Printer is connected to a dedicated fax line



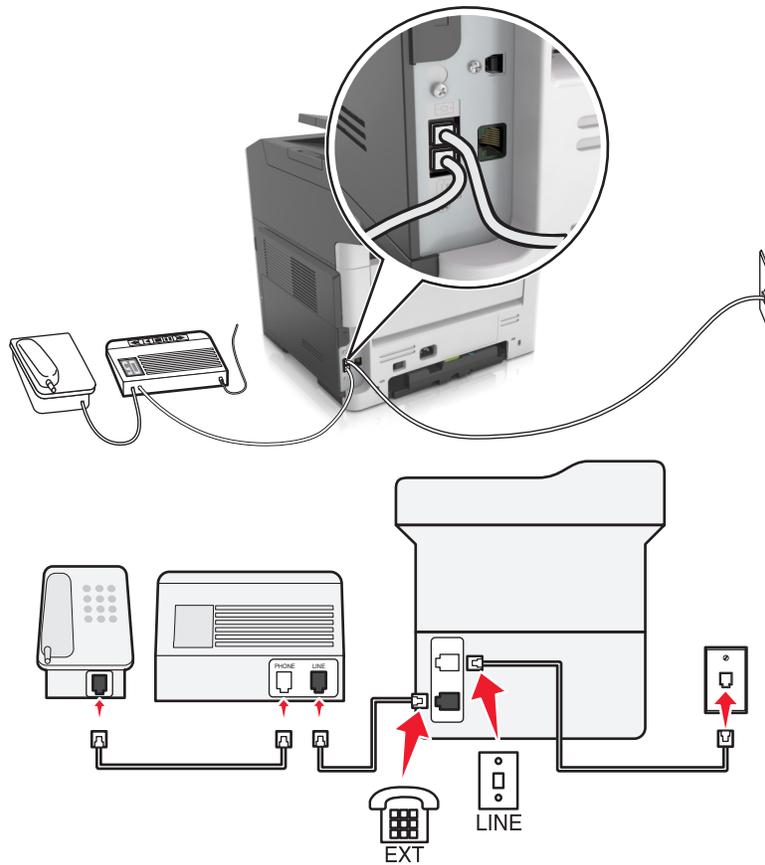
#### To connect:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.

#### Tips for this setup:

- You can set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On) or manually (Auto Answer Off).
- If you want to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), then set the printer to pick up on any number of rings that you want.

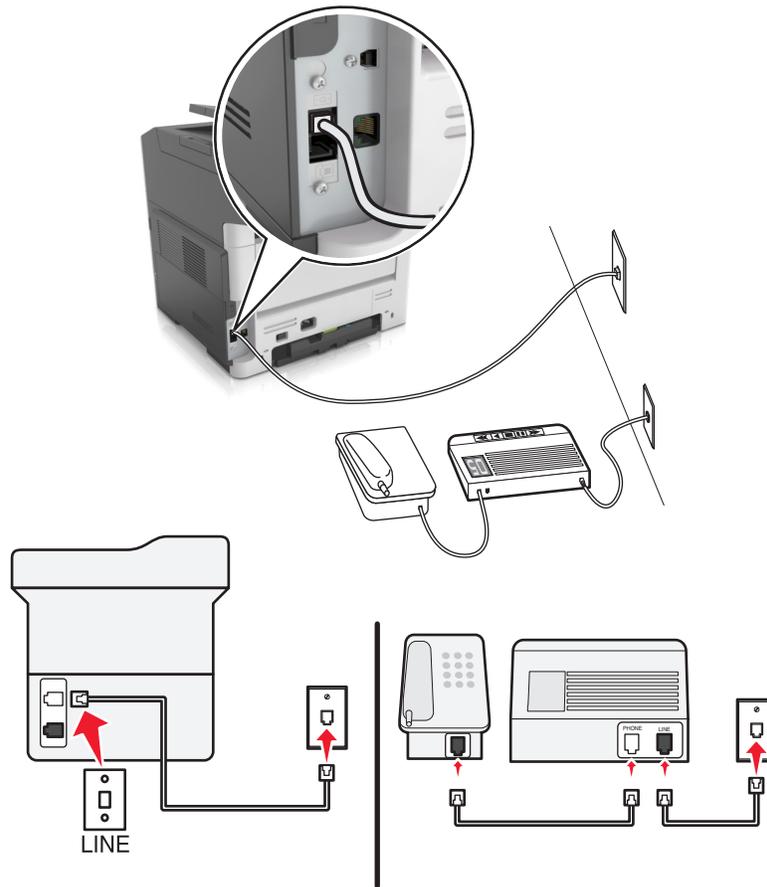
**Setup 2: Printer is sharing the line with an answering machine**  
**Connected to the same telephone wall jack**



**To connect:**

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.
- 3 Connect the answering machine to the  port of the printer.

### Connected to different wall jacks



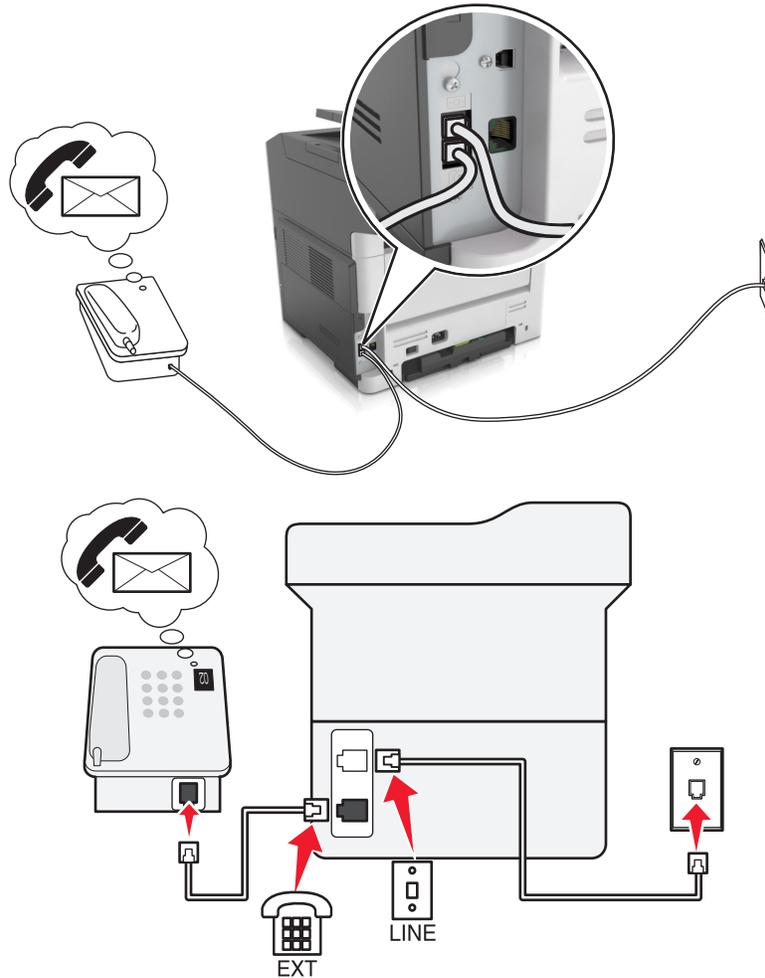
#### To connect:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.

#### Tips for this setup:

- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then you need to set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On).
- Set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer to pick up after six rings. This way, the answering machine picks up calls first and your voice calls are received. If the call is a fax, then the printer detects the fax signal on the line and takes over the call.
- If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service provided by your telephone company, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

### Setup 3: Printer is sharing the line with a telephone subscribed to voice mail service



#### To connect:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.
- 3 Connect the telephone to the  port of the printer.

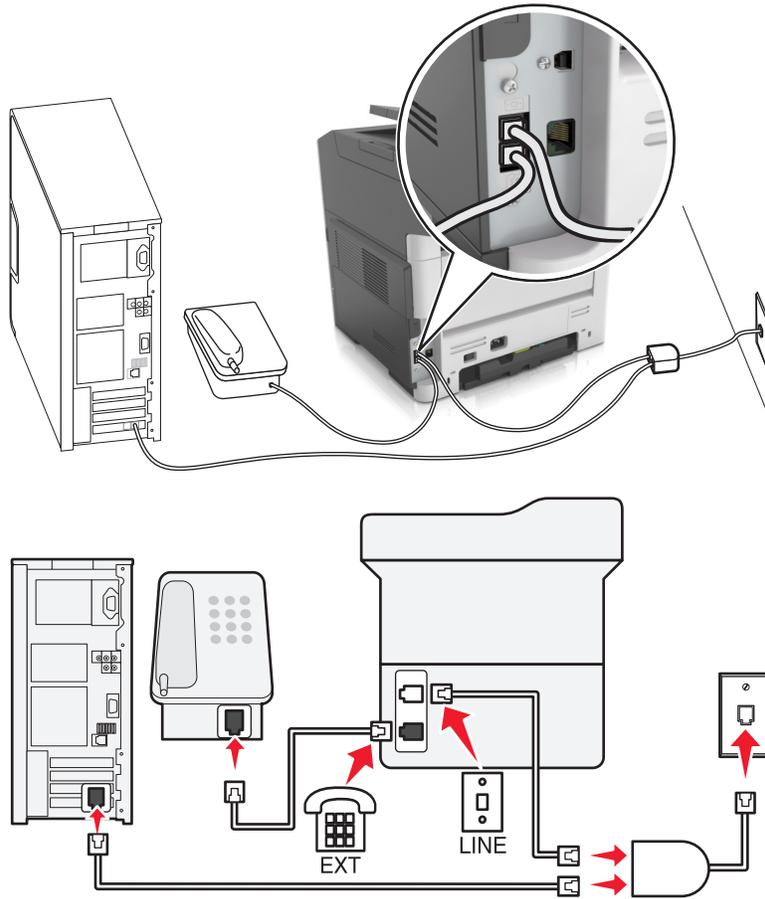
#### Tips for this setup:

- This setup works best if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service. If you have distinctive ring service, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.
- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then you need to set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off).

When you answer the telephone and you hear fax tones, press **\*9\*** or the manual answer code on the telephone to receive the fax.

- You can also set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), but you need to turn off the voice mail service when you are expecting a fax. This setting works best if you are using voice mail more often than fax.

## Scenario 2: Digital Subscriber Line (DSL)



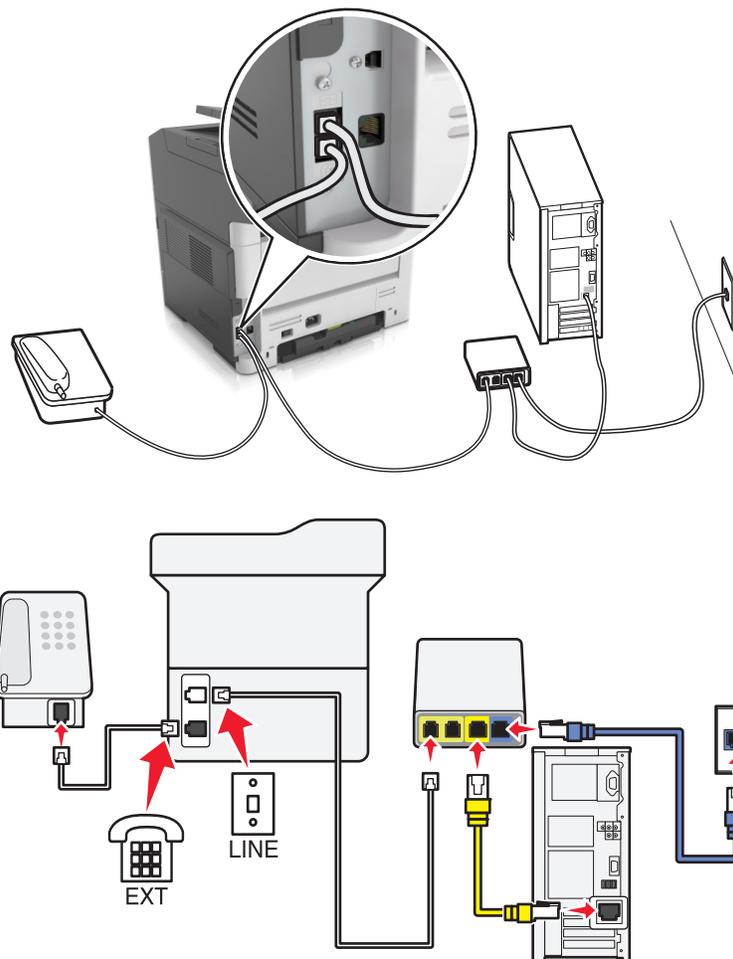
A Digital Subscriber Line splits your regular telephone line into two channels: voice and Internet. Telephone and fax signals travel through the voice channel, and Internet signals pass through the other channel. This way, you can use the same line for analog voice calls (including faxes) and digital Internet access.

To minimize interference between the two channels and ensure a quality connection, you need to install a DSL filter for the analog devices (fax machine, telephone, answering machine) in your network. Interference causes noise and static on the telephone, failed and poor quality faxes for the printer, and slow Internet connection on your computer.

To install a filter for the printer:

- 1 Connect the line port of the DSL filter to the wall jack.
- 2 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with your printer to the  port of the printer. Connect the other end to the phone port on the DSL filter.
- 3 To continue using a computer for Internet access, connect the computer to the DSL HPN port on the DSL filter.
- 4 To connect a telephone to the printer, remove any installed adapter plug from the  port of the printer, and then connect the telephone to the port.

### Scenario 3: VoIP telephone service



#### To connect:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the port labeled **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port** on the VoIP adapter.

**Note:** The port labeled **Phone Line 2** or **Fax Port** is not always active. VoIP providers may charge additional cost for activation of the second phone port.

- 3 Connect the telephone to the  port of the printer.

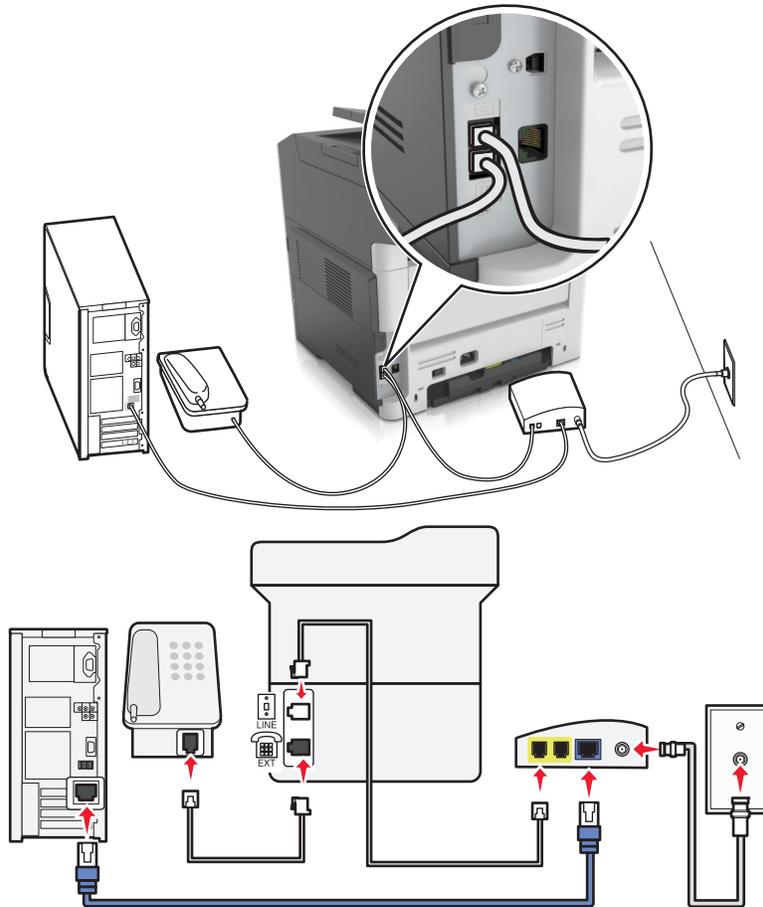
#### Tips for this setup:

- To make sure that the phone port on the VoIP adapter is active, plug an analog telephone into the phone port, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the port is active.
- If you need two phone ports for your devices, but do not want to pay additional cost, then do not plug the printer into the second phone port. You can use a phone splitter. Plug the phone splitter into the port labeled **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port**, and then plug the printer and telephone into the splitter.

**Note:** Make sure you use a phone splitter, *not* a line splitter. To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.

## Scenario 4: Digital telephone service through a cable provider

### Setup 1: Printer is connected directly to a cable modem



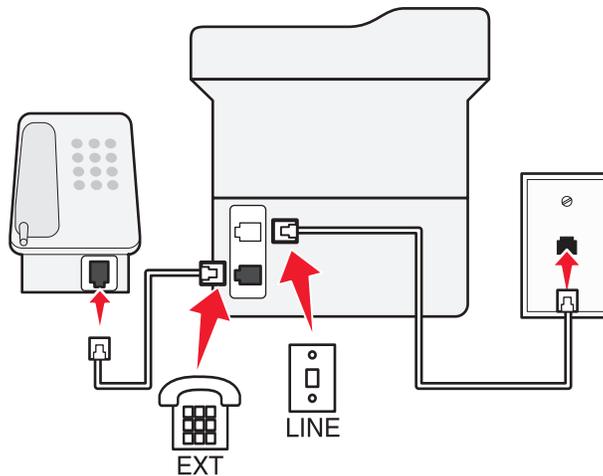
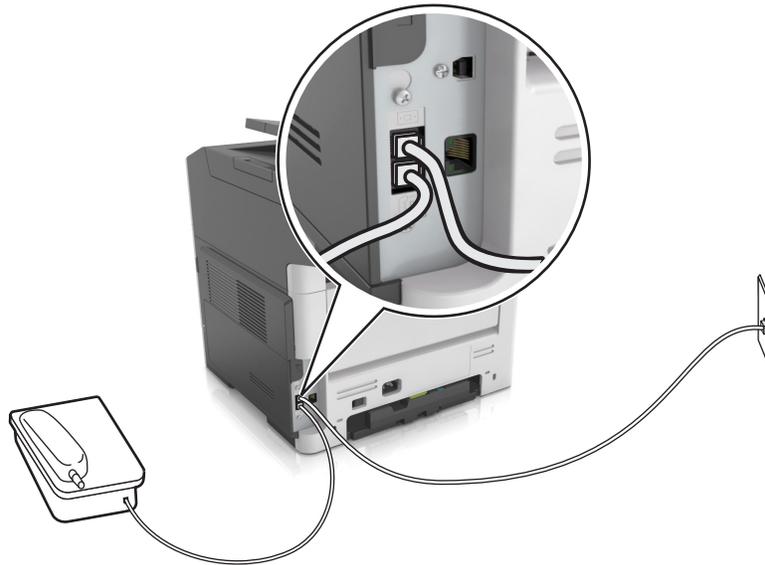
- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with your printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the port labeled **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port** on the cable modem.

**Note:** The port labeled **Phone Line 2** or **Fax Port** is not always active. VoIP providers may charge additional cost for activation of the second phone port.

- 3 Connect your analog telephone phone to the  port of the printer.

#### Notes:

- To make sure that the telephone port on the cable modem is active, plug an analog telephone into the telephone port, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the port is active.
- If you need two telephone ports for your devices, but do not want to pay additional cost, then do not plug the printer into the second telephone port. You can use a phone splitter. Plug the phone splitter into the **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port**, and then plug the printer and telephone into the splitter.
- Make sure you use a phone splitter, *not* a line splitter. To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.

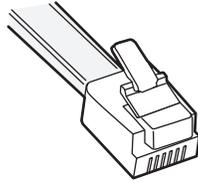
**Setup 2: Printer is connected to a wall jack; cable modem is installed elsewhere in the facility**

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with your printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.
- 3 Connect your analog telephone to the  port of the printer.

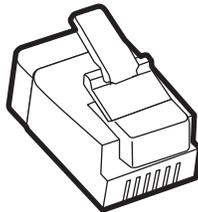
**Scenario 5: Countries or regions with different telephone wall jacks and plugs**

Some countries or regions may have different types of telephone wall jack connectors than those that came with the printer. The standard wall jack adopted by most countries or regions is RJ-11. Your printer comes with the RJ-11 jack and a telephone cable with the RJ-11 plug.

If the wall jack or equipment in your facility is not compatible with this type of connection, then you need to use a telephone adapter. An adapter for your country or region may not come with your printer, and you may need to purchase it separately.

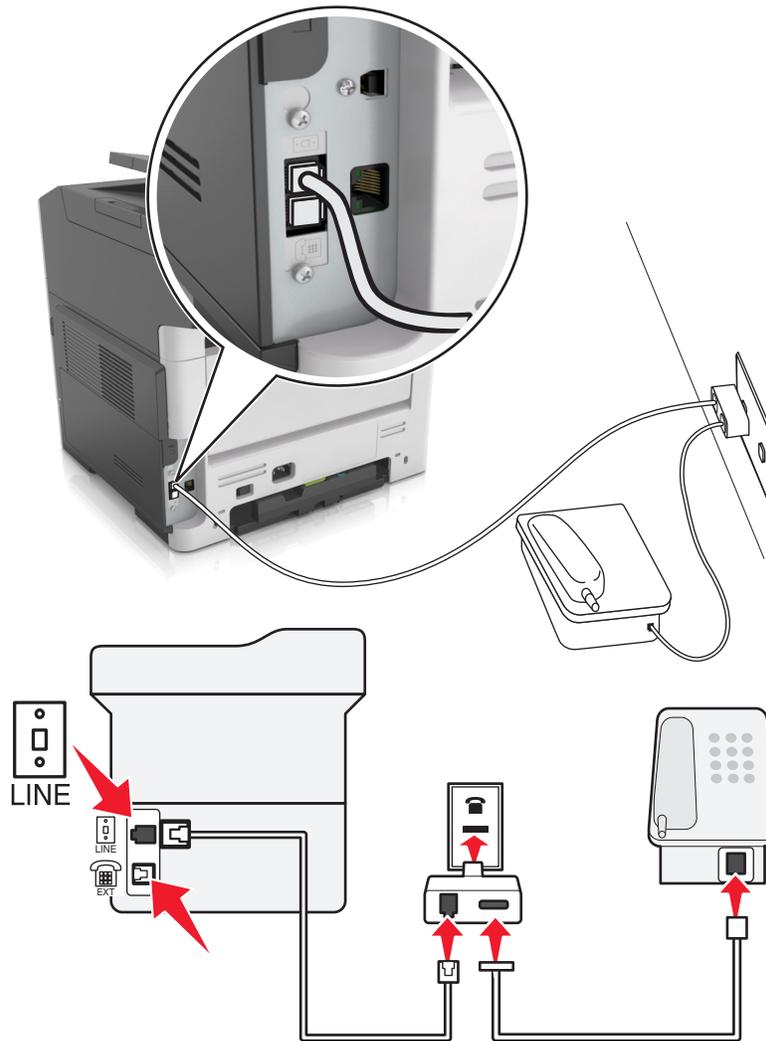


There may be an adapter plug installed in the  port of the printer. If you are using a telephone adapter or a facility that has a cascaded or serial wiring scheme, then do not remove the adapter plug from the  port of the printer.



Part name	Part number
Lexmark adapter plug	40X8519

## Connecting the printer to a non-RJ-11 wall jack



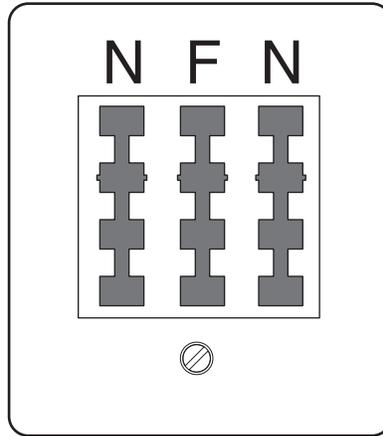
- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to the wall jack.
- 3 If you want to connect another device (telephone or answering machine) to the same wall jack, and if the device has a non-RJ-11 connector, then connect it directly to the telephone adapter.

### Notes:

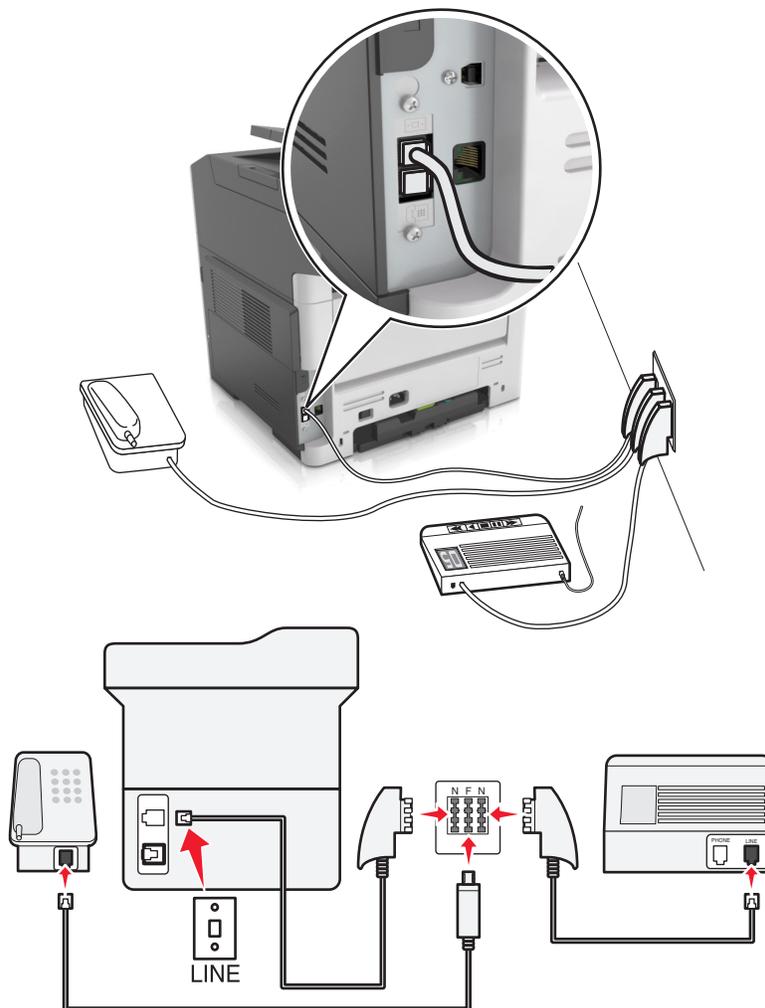
- The  port of the printer may have an adapter plug for use with the adapter. Do *not* remove the plug from the  port of the printer.
- In some countries or regions, the printer may not come with a telephone adapter or an adapter plug.

### Connecting the printer to a wall jack in Germany

The German wall jack has two kinds of ports. The N ports are for fax machines, modems, and answering machines. The F port is for telephones.



Connect the printer to any of the N ports.



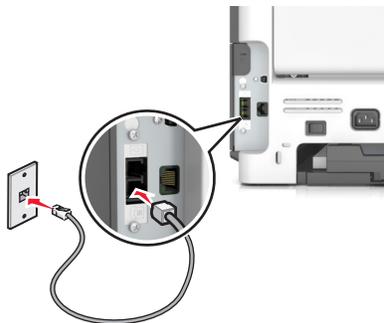
- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to an N port.
- 3 If you want to connect a telephone and answering machine to the same wall jack, then connect the devices as shown.

**Note:** Do *not* remove the adapter plug from the  port of the printer if you are connecting to a serial or cascaded telephone system.

## Connecting to a distinctive ring service

A distinctive ring service may be available from your telephone company. This service lets you have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line, with each telephone number having a different ring pattern. This may be useful for distinguishing between fax and voice calls. If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.



- 3 Change the Distinctive Rings setting to match the setting you want the printer to answer.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Fax Settings** >  > **Distinctive Rings** > select the ring tone you want > 

## Setting the outgoing fax or station name and number

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup**.
- 3 From the Fax Settings menu, type the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes in the Fax Name or Station Name field.
- 4 In the Fax Number or Station Number field, enter the printer fax number.
- 5 Click **Submit**.

## Setting the date and time

You can set the date and time so that they are printed on every fax you send. If there is a power failure, then you may have to reset the date and time.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > Other Settings area > **Security** > **Set Date and Time**.

- 3 In the Set Date & Time field, enter the current date and time.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

**Note:** We recommend using the network time.

## Configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time

Set the printer to automatically adjust for daylight saving time.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Security** > **Set Date and Time**.

- 3 Select the **Automatically Observe DST** check box, and then enter the DST start and end dates in the Custom Time Zone Setup section.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

## Sending a fax

### Sending a fax using the printer control panel

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Fax** >  > enter a fax or shortcut number on the keypad >  > **Original Size** > 

**Note:** If you want to fax another document, then place it on the scanner glass, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Scan the Next Page**, and then press .

4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Finish the Job**, and then press .

## Sending a fax using the computer

The printer driver fax option lets you send a print job to the printer, which sends the job as a fax. The fax option works as a normal fax machine, but is controlled through the printer driver instead of the printer control panel.

1 With a document open, click **File** > **Print**.

2 Select the printer, and then navigate to:

**Properties** > **Fax** tab > **Enable fax**

3 Enter the recipient fax number or numbers in the “Fax number(s)” field.

**Note:** Fax numbers can be entered manually or by using the Phone Book feature

4 If necessary, enter a prefix in the “Dialing prefix” field.

5 Select the appropriate paper size and page orientation.

6 If you want to include a cover page with the fax, then select **Include cover page with fax**, and then enter the appropriate information.

7 Click **OK**.

### Notes:

- The Fax option is available for use only with the PostScript driver or the Universal Fax Driver. For information on installing these drivers, see the *Software and Documentation* CD.
- The Fax option must be configured and enabled in the PostScript driver under the Configuration tab before it can be used.
- If the **Always display settings prior to faxing** check box is selected, then you are prompted to verify the recipient information before the fax is sent. If this check box is cleared, then the queued document is sent automatically as a fax when you click **OK** on the Fax tab.

## Sending a fax using a shortcut number

Fax shortcuts are just like the speed dial numbers on a telephone or fax machine. A shortcut number (1–999) can contain a single recipient or multiple recipients.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

### Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
  - 3 Press #, and then enter the shortcut number on the keypad.
  - 4 Press .

## Sending a fax using the address book

The address book feature lets you search for bookmarks and network directory servers.

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

### Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
  - The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
  - 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Fax** >  >  > select the name of the recipient > 

## Sending a fax at a scheduled time

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

### Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
  - The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly into the ADF tray.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
  - 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Fax** >  > enter the fax number > **Delayed Send** > **Send Later** > select the date you want the fax to be sent >  > select the time you want the fax to be sent > 

- 4 Press .

**Note:** The document is scanned, and then faxed at the scheduled time.

## Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

Assign a shortcut number to a single fax number or a group of fax numbers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > Manage Shortcuts > Fax Shortcut Setup**.

**Note:** A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, then contact your system support person.

**3** Type a name for the shortcut, and then enter the fax number.**Notes:**

- To create a multiple-number shortcut, enter the fax numbers for the group.
- Separate each fax number in the group with a semicolon (;).

**4** Assign a shortcut number.

**Note:** If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

**5** Click **Add**.

## Customizing fax settings

### Changing the fax resolution

**1** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

**2** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.**3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Fax** >  > enter the fax number > **Resolution** > select the resolution you want

**Note:** You can choose from Standard (fastest speed) to Ultra Fine (slowest speed and best quality).

**4** Press .

### Making a fax lighter or darker

**1** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
  - 3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

Fax >  > enter the fax number >  > **Darkness** > adjust the darkness of the fax > 

## Viewing a fax log

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Reports**.

- 3 Click **Fax Job Log** or **Fax Call Log**.

## Blocking junk faxes

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup > Block No Name Fax**.

### Notes:

- This option blocks all incoming faxes that have a private caller ID or no fax name.
- In the Banned Fax List field, enter the phone numbers or fax names of specific fax callers you want to block.

## Canceling an outgoing fax

### Canceling a fax job while the original documents are still scanning

- If you are using the ADF tray and **Scanning page** appears, then press .
- If you are using the scanner glass and **Scanning page**, **Scan the Next Page**, or **Finish the Job** appears, then press .

## Canceling a fax job after scanning the original documents

- 1 From the printer control panel, press .
- 2 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press  > **Delete Selected Jobs**.

## Holding and forwarding faxes

### Holding faxes

This option lets you hold received faxes from printing until they are released. Held faxes can be released manually or at a scheduled day or time.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup > Holding Faxes**.
- 3 From the Held Fax Mode menu, select **Off, Always On, Manual, or Scheduled**.
- 4 If you selected Scheduled, then continue with the following steps:
  - a Click **Fax Holding Schedule**.
  - b From the Action menu, select **Hold faxes**.
  - c From the Time menu, select the time you want the held faxes released.
  - d From the Day(s) menu, select the day you want the held faxes released.
- 5 Click **Add**.

### Forwarding a fax

This option lets you print and forward received faxes to a fax number, e-mail address, FTP site, or LDSS.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings**.
- 3 From the Fax Forwarding menu, select **Print, Print and Forward, or Forward**.
- 4 From the "Forward to" menu, select **Fax, E-mail, FTP, LDSS, or eSF**.

5 In the “Forward to Shortcut” field, enter the shortcut number where you want the fax forwarded.

**Note:** The shortcut number must be valid for the setting selected in the “Forward to” menu.

6 Click **Submit**.

## Understanding the fax options

### Original Size

This option lets you choose the size of the documents you are going to fax.

1 From the Fax area of the printer control panel, press the **Options** button.

**Original Size** appears.

2 Press .

3 Press the arrow buttons until the size of the original document appears, and then press .

### Resolution

This option lets you adjust the quality of the fax output. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Decreasing the image resolution reduces the file size.

Select one of the following:

- **Standard**—Use this when faxing most documents.
- **Fine 200 dpi**—Use this when faxing documents with small prints.
- **Super fine 300 dpi**—Use this when faxing documents with fine details.
- **Ultra fine 600 dpi**—Use this when faxing documents with pictures or photos.

### Darkness

This option lets you adjust how light or dark the faxes are in relation to the original document.

### Content Type

This option lets you set the original document type.

Select from the following content types:

- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.

## Content Source

This option lets you set the original document source.

Select from the following content sources:

- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from a film.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

## Sides (Duplex)

This option informs the printer if the original document is simplex (printed on one side) or duplex (printed on both sides). This lets the scanner know what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the fax.

**Note:** Duplex scanning is not available on selected printer models.

## Orientation

This option lets you specify the orientation of the original document, and then change the Sides and Binding settings to match the orientation.

## Binding

This option lets you specify if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

# Scanning

## Scanning to an FTP address

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
	
<p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	<p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server. Only one FTP address may be sent to the server at a time.

When an FTP destination has been configured by your system support person, the name of the destination becomes available as a shortcut number, or it is listed as a profile under the Held Jobs icon. An FTP destination could also be another PostScript printer.

## Creating shortcuts

### Creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Navigate to:

**Settings** > Other Settings area > **Manage Shortcuts** > **FTP Shortcut Setup**

- 3 Enter the appropriate information.

**Note:** A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, then contact your system support person.

4 Enter a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

5 Click **Add**.

## Scanning to an FTP address

### Scanning to an FTP address using a shortcut number

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, press #, and then enter the FTP shortcut number.

4 Press .

### Scanning to an FTP address using the address book

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is properly loaded.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **FTP Shortcuts** >  > select the name of the recipient > 

## Scanning to a computer

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
	
<p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.</p>	<p>Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a computer. The computer does not have to be directly connected to the printer for you to receive Scan to PC images. You can scan the document back to the computer over the network by creating a scan profile on the computer and then downloading the profile to the printer.

### Scanning to a computer

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Scan Profile > Create Scan Profile**.
- 3 Select your scan settings, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Select a location on your computer where you want to save the scanned output file.
- 5 Type a scan name.  
The scan name is the name that appears in the Scan Profile list on the display.
- 6 Click **Submit**.
- 7 Review the instructions on the Scan Profile screen.

A shortcut number is automatically assigned when you click **Submit**. You can use this shortcut number when you are ready to scan your documents.

- a Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light turns on when the paper is loaded properly.

**b** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

**c** From the printer control panel, press **#**, and then type the shortcut number using the keypad, or press the up or down arrow button to scroll to **Held Jobs**, and then press the up or down arrow button to scroll to **Profiles**. After entering the shortcut number, the scanner scans and sends the document to the directory or program you specified. If you selected **Profiles** on the printer control panel, then locate your shortcut on the list.

**8** View the file from the computer.

The output file is saved in the location or launched in the program you specified.

# Understanding printer menus

## Menus list

<b>Paper Menu</b>	<b>Reports</b>	<b>Network/Ports</b>	<b>Security</b>	<b>Settings</b>
Default Source	Menu Settings Page	Active NIC	Confidential Print	General Settings
Paper Size/Type	Device Statistics	Standard Network <sup>2</sup>	Security Audit Log	Copy Settings
Configure MP	Network Setup Page <sup>1</sup>	SMTP Setup	Set Date and Time	Fax Settings
Substitute Size	Shortcut List			E-mail Settings
Paper Texture	Fax Job Log			FTP Settings
Paper Weight	Fax Call Log			Print Settings
Paper Loading	Copy Shortcuts			
Custom Types	E-mail Shortcuts			
Custom Scan Sizes	Fax Shortcuts			
Universal Setup	FTP Shortcuts			
	Profiles List			
	Print Fonts			
	Asset Report			
<b>Help</b>	<b>Manage Shortcuts</b>			
Print All Guides	Fax Shortcuts			
Copy Guide	E-mail Shortcuts			
E-mail Guide	FTP Shortcuts			
Fax Guide	Copy Shortcuts			
FTP Guide	Profile Shortcuts			
Print Defects Guide				
Information Guide				
Supplies Guide				

<sup>1</sup> Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Network Setup Page or Network [x] Setup Page.

<sup>2</sup> Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Standard Network or Network [x].

## Paper menu

### Default Source menu

Use	To
<b>Default Source</b> Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set a default paper source for all print jobs.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to “Cassette” for MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> <li>• If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the paper size and paper type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.</li> </ul>

### Paper Size/Type menu

Use	To
<b>Tray [x] Size</b> A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (Mexico) Folio Statement Universal	Specify the size of the paper loaded in each tray.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• If the same size and type of paper are loaded in two trays and the tray settings for paper size and type match, then the trays are automatically linked. The multipurpose feeder may also be linked. When one tray is empty, the job prints using paper from the linked tray.</li> <li>• A6 is supported only in Tray 1 and in the multipurpose feeder.</li> </ul>
<b>Tray [x] Type</b> Plain Paper Transparency Recycled Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Custom Type [x]	Specify the type of the paper loaded in each tray.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays.</li> <li>• If available, a user-defined name will appear instead of Custom Type [x].</li> <li>• Use this menu to configure automatic tray linking.</li> </ul>
<b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.	

Use	To
<p><b>MP Feeder Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (Mexico)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>7 3/4 Envelope</li> <li>9 Envelope</li> <li>10 Envelope</li> <li>DL Envelope</li> <li>C5 Envelope</li> <li>B5 Envelope</li> <li>Other Envelope</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the size of the paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to “Cassette” for MP Feeder Size to appear as a menu item.</li> <li>• The multipurpose feeder does not automatically detect paper size. The paper size value must be set.</li> </ul>
<p><b>MP Feeder Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Envelope</li> <li>Rough Envelope</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the type of the paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to “Cassette” in order for MP Feeder Type to appear as a menu item.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.</p>	

Use	To
<p><b>Manual Paper Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (Mexico)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the size of the paper being manually loaded.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Manual Paper Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the type of the paper being manually loaded.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to “Manual” in order for Manual Paper Type to appear as a menu item.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Manual Envelope Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7 3/4 Envelope</li> <li>9 Envelope</li> <li>10 Envelope</li> <li>DL Envelope</li> <li>C5 Envelope</li> <li>B5 Envelope</li> <li>Other Envelope</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the size of the envelope being manually loaded.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 10 Envelope is the U.S. factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Manual Envelope Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Envelope</li> <li>Rough Envelope</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the type of the envelope being manually loaded.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Envelope is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.</p>	

## Configure MP menu

Use	To
<b>Configure MP</b> Cassette Manual First	Determine when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cassette is the factory default setting. Cassette configures the multipurpose feeder as the automatic paper source.</li> <li>• Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual-feed print jobs.</li> <li>• First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.</li> </ul>

## Substitute Size menu

Use	To
<b>Substitute Size</b> Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4 All Listed	Substitute a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Listed is the factory default setting. All available substitutions are allowed.</li> <li>• Off indicates that no size substitutions are allowed.</li> <li>• Setting a size substitution lets the print job continue without <b>Change Paper</b> appearing.</li> </ul>

## Paper Texture menu

Use	To
<b>Plain Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the plain paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Card Stock Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the card stock loaded. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The options appear only if card stock is supported.</li> </ul>
<b>Transparency Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the transparencies loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Labels Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the labels loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the bond paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Envelope Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the envelopes loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough Envelope Texture</b> Rough	Specify the relative texture of the rough envelopes loaded.
<b>Letterhead Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the letterhead loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Preprinted Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the preprinted paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Colored Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the colored paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Heavy Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough/Cotton Texture</b> Rough	Specify the relative texture of the cotton paper loaded.
<b>Custom [x] Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the custom paper loaded. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The options appear only if the custom type is supported.</li> </ul>

## Paper Weight menu

Use	To
<b>Plain Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the plain paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Card Stock Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the card stock loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Transparency Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the transparencies loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Labels Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the labels loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the bond paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Envelope Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the envelope loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough Envelope Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the rough envelope loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Letterhead Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the letterhead loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Preprinted Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Colored Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the colored paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Weight</b> Light	Specify that the relative weight of the paper loaded is light.
<b>Heavy Weight</b> Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the paper loaded is heavy.
<b>Rough/Cotton Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the cotton or rough paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom [x] Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the custom paper loaded. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The options appear only when the custom type is supported.</li> </ul>

## Paper Loading menu

Use	To
<b>Recycled Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type.
<b>Bond Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Bond as the paper type.
<b>Letterhead Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type.
<b>Preprinted Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type.
<b>Colored Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Colored as the paper type.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Duplex sets two-sided printing as the default for all print jobs unless one-sided printing is set from Printing Preferences or Print dialog.</li> <li>• If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including one-sided jobs.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for all the menus.</li> </ul>	

Use	To
<b>Light Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Light as the paper type.
<b>Heavy Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type.
<b>Custom [x] Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Custom [x] as the paper type.  <b>Note:</b> Custom [x] Loading is available only if the custom type is supported.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Duplex sets two-sided printing as the default for all print jobs unless one-sided printing is set from Printing Preferences or Print dialog.</li> <li>• If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including one-sided jobs.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for all the menus.</li> </ul>	

## Custom Types menu

Use	To
<b>Custom Type [x]</b> Paper Card Stock Transparency Rough/Cotton Labels Envelope	Associate a paper or specialty media type with a factory default Custom Type [x] name or a user-defined custom name created in the Embedded Web Server or MarkVision™ Professional. The user-defined name appears instead of Custom Type [x].  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper is the factory default setting for Custom Type [x].</li> <li>• The custom media type must be supported in the selected tray or feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul>
<b>Recycled</b> Paper Card Stock Transparency Rough/Cotton Labels Envelope Cotton	Specify a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The Recycled paper type must be supported in the selected tray or feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul>

## Custom Scan Sizes menu

Use	To
<b>Custom Scan Size [x]</b> Scan Size Name Width Height Orientation Portrait Landscape 2 scans per side Off On	Specify a custom scan size name and page orientation.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The custom scan size name replaces Custom Scan Size [x] in the printer menus.</li> <li>• ADF Media Type is the factory default setting for custom scan sizes 3, 4, 5, and 6.</li> <li>• 8.5 inches is the U.S. factory default setting for Width. 210 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Width.</li> <li>• 14 inches is the U.S. factory default setting for Height. 297 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Height.</li> <li>• Portrait is the factory default setting for Orientation.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for “2 scans per side.”</li> </ul>

## Universal Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Units of Measure</b> Inches Millimeters	Identify the units of measure.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inches is the US factory default setting.</li> <li>• Millimeters is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Portrait Width</b> 3–8.5 inches 76–216 mm	Set the portrait width.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed.</li> <li>• 8.5 inches is the US factory default setting. You can increase the width in 0.01-inch increments.</li> <li>• 216 mm is the international factory default setting. You can increase the width in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Portrait Height</b> 3–14.17 inches 76–360 mm	Set the portrait height.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed.</li> <li>• 14 inches is the US factory default setting. You can increase the height in 0.01-inch increments.</li> <li>• 356 mm is the international factory default setting. You can increase the height in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Feed Direction</b> Short Edge Long Edge	Specify the feed direction if the paper can be loaded in either direction.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Short Edge is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Long Edge appears only when the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported in the tray.</li> </ul>

## Reports menu

### Reports menu

Use	To
<b>Menu Settings Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the paper loaded into trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information.
<b>Device Statistics</b>	Print a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages.
<b>Network Setup Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information.  <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.
<b>Shortcut List</b>	Print a report containing information about configured shortcuts.
<b>Fax Job Log</b>	Print a report containing information about the last 200 completed faxes.  <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.
<b>Fax Call Log</b>	Print a report containing information about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls.  <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.
<b>Copy Shortcuts</b>	Print a report containing information about copy shortcuts.
<b>E-mail Shortcuts</b>	Print a report containing information about e-mail shortcuts.
<b>Fax Shortcuts</b>	Print a report containing information about fax shortcuts.
<b>FTP Shortcuts</b>	Print a report containing information about FTP shortcuts.
<b>Profiles List</b>	Print a list of profiles stored in the printer.
<b>Print Fonts</b>	Print a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer.
<b>Asset Report</b>	Print a report containing asset information including the printer serial number and model name. The report contains text and UPC bar codes that can be scanned into an asset database.

## Network/Ports menu

### Active NIC menu

Use	To
<b>Active NIC</b> Auto [list of available network cards]	<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when an optional network card is installed.</li> </ul>

### Standard Network or Network [x] menu

**Note:** Only active ports appear in this menu. All inactive ports are omitted.

Use	To
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If PCL SmartSwitch is disabled, then the printer does not examine incoming data and it uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</li> </ul>
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If PS SmartSwitch is disabled, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Network Buffer</b></p> <p>Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]</p>	<p>Set the size of the network input buffer.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The value can be changed in 1KB increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel, and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Mac Binary PS</b></p> <p>On Off Auto</p>	<p>Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> <li>• On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup</b></p> <p>Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk</p>	<p>Display and set the printer network settings.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.</p>

## Reports menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Reports**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Reports**

Use	To
<b>Print Setup Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address.

## Network Card menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Network Card**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Network Card**

Use	To
<b>View Card Status</b> Connected Disconnected	View the connection status of the network card.
<b>View Card Speed</b>	View the speed of an active network card.
<b>Network Address</b> UAA LAA	View the network addresses.
<b>Job Timeout</b> 0–255 seconds	Set the amount of time it takes for a network print job to be canceled.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 90 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• A setting value of 0 disables the timeout.</li> <li>• If a value of 1–9 is selected, then the setting is saved as 10.</li> </ul>

## TCP/IP menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > TCP/IP**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > TCP/IP**

**Note:** This menu is available only in network printers or printers attached to print servers.

Use	To
<b>Set Hostname</b>	Set the current TCP/IP host name.  <b>Note:</b> This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>IP Address</b>	View or change the current TCP/IP address.  <b>Note:</b> Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
<b>Netmask</b>	View or change the current TCP/IP netmask.
<b>Gateway</b>	View or change the current TCP/IP gateway.
<b>Enable DHCP</b> On Off	Specify the DHCP address and parameter assignment.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable RARP</b> On Off	Specify the RARP address assignment setting.  <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable BOOTP</b> On Off	Specify the BOOTP address assignment setting.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Enable AutoIP</b> Yes No	Specify the Zero Configuration Networking setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable FTP/TFTP</b> Yes No	Enable the built-in FTP server, which lets you send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable HTTP Server</b> Yes No	Enable the built-in Web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a Web browser. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>WINS Server Address</b>	View or change the current WINS server address.
<b>Enable DDNS</b> Yes No	View or change the current DDNS setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable mDNS</b> Yes No	View or change the current mDNS setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>DNS Server Address</b>	View or change the current DNS server address.
<b>Backup DNS Server Address</b>	View or change the backup DNS server addresses.
<b>Backup DNS Server Address 2</b>	
<b>Backup DNS Server Address 3</b>	
<b>Enable HTTPS</b> Yes No	View or change the current HTTPS setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.

## IPv6 menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > IPv6**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > IPv6**

**Note:** This menu is available only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

Use	To
<b>Enable IPv6</b> On Off	Enable IPv6 in the printer. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Auto Configuration</b> On Off	Specify whether or not the wireless network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>View Hostname</b>	Set the host name.
<b>View Address</b>	<b>Note:</b> These settings can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>View Router Address</b>	
<b>Enable DHCPv6</b> On Off	Enable DHCPv6 in the printer. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

## Wireless menu

**Note:** This menu is available only in printers connected to an Ethernet network and printers with a wireless network adapter attached.

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Wireless**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless**

Use	To
<b>Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)</b> Start Push Button Method Start PIN Method	Establish a wireless network connection and enable network security. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start Push Button Method connects the printer to a wireless network when buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) are pressed within a given period of time.</li> <li>• Start PIN Method connects the printer to a wireless network when a PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.</li> </ul>
<b>Enable/Disable WPS Auto-detection</b> Enable Disable	Automatically detect the connection method that an access point with WPS uses—Start Push Button Method or Start PIN Method. <b>Note:</b> Disable is the factory default setting.
<b>Network Mode</b> BSS Type Infrastructure Ad hoc	Specify the network mode. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infrastructure is the factory default setting. This lets the printer access a network using an access point.</li> <li>• Ad hoc configures a wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer.</li> </ul>
<b>Compatibility</b> 802.11b/g 802.11b/g/n	Specify the wireless standard for the wireless network. <b>Note:</b> The 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
<b>Choose Network</b>	Select an available network for the printer to use.
<b>View Signal Quality</b>	View the quality of the wireless connection.
<b>View Security Mode</b>	View the encryption method for the wireless network.

## AppleTalk menu

**Note:** This menu is available only in printer models connected to a wired network or when an optional network card is installed.

To access the menu, navigate to any of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > AppleTalk**
- **Network/Ports > Network Setup [x] > AppleTalk**

Use	To
<b>Activate</b> Yes No	Enable or disable AppleTalk support. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>View Name</b>	Show the assigned AppleTalk name. <b>Note:</b> The name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>View Address</b>	Show the assigned AppleTalk address. <b>Note:</b> The address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>Set Zone</b> [[list of zones available on the network]]	Provide a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network. <b>Note:</b> The factory default setting is the default zone for the network. If no default zone exists, then the zone marked with an asterisk (*) is the default setting.

## SMTP Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>	Specify SMTP server gateway and port information. <b>Note:</b> 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
<b>Primary SMTP Gateway Port</b>	
<b>Secondary SMTP Gateway</b>	
<b>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port</b>	
<b>SMTP Timeout</b> 5–30	Specify the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail. <b>Note:</b> 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
<b>Reply Address</b>	Specify a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer.
<b>Use SSL</b> Disabled Negotiate Required	Set the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabled is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>SMTP Server Authentication</b> No authentication required Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Specify the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges. <b>Note:</b> “No authentication required” is the factory default setting.
<b>Device-Initiated E-mail</b> None Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specify what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. <b>Notes:</b>
<b>Device Userid</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting for Device-Initiated E-mail.</li> <li>• Device Userid and Device Password are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.</li> </ul>
<b>Device Password</b>	

## Security menu

### Security Audit Log menu

Use	To
<b>Export Log</b>	Let an authorized user export the audit log. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To export the audit log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer.</li> <li>• The audit log can be downloaded from the Embedded Web Server and saved on a computer.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete Log</b> Yes No	Specify whether or not audit logs are deleted. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Configure Log</b> Enable Audit Yes No Enable Remote Syslog No Yes Remote Syslog Facility 0–23 Severity of events to log 0–7	Specify how and whether or not audit logs are created. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable Audit determines if events are recorded in the secure audit log and remote syslog. No is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Enable Remote Syslog determines if logs are sent to a remote server. No is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Remote Syslog Facility determines the value used to send logs to the remote syslog server. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If the security audit log is activated, then the severity value of each event is recorded. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>

## Set Date and Time menu

Use	To
<b>Current Date and Time</b>	View the current date and time settings for the printer.
<b>Manually Set Date and Time</b> [input date/time]	Enter the date and time. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manually setting the date and time sets Enable NTP to No.</li> <li>• The wizard lets you set the date and time in YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM format.</li> </ul>
<b>Time Zone</b> [list of time zones]	Select the time zone. <b>Note:</b> GMT is the factory default settings.
<b>Automatically observe DST</b> On Off	Set the printer to use the applicable daylight saving time (DST) start and end times associated with the printer Time Zone setting. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable NTP</b> On Off	Enable Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This setting is turned off if you manually set the date and time.</li> </ul>

# Settings menu

## General Settings menu

Use	To
<p><b>Display Language</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>English</li> <li>Francais</li> <li>Deutsch</li> <li>Italiano</li> <li>Espanol</li> <li>Dansk</li> <li>Norsk</li> <li>Nederlands</li> <li>Svenska</li> <li>Portuguese</li> <li>Suomi</li> <li>Russian</li> <li>Polski</li> <li>Greek</li> <li>Magyar</li> <li>Turkce</li> <li>Cesky</li> <li>Simplified Chinese</li> <li>Traditional Chinese</li> <li>Korean</li> <li>Japanese</li> </ul>	<p>Set the language of the text appearing on the printer display.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Not all languages are available for all printers, and you may need to install special hardware for those languages to appear.</p>
<p><b>Show Supply Estimates</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Show estimates</li> <li>Do not show estimates</li> </ul>	<p>Display the estimates of the supplies on the printer control panel, Web page, menu settings, and the device statistics reports.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Show estimates is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Eco-Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Energy</li> <li>Energy/Paper</li> <li>Paper</li> </ul>	<p>Minimize the use of energy, paper, or specialty media.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. This resets the printer to its factory default settings.</li> <li>• Energy minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> <li>• Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power and of paper and specialty media.</li> <li>• Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> </ul>
<p><b>ADF Loaded Beep</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enabled</li> <li>Disabled</li> </ul>	<p>Specify whether or not the ADF sounds a beep when paper is loaded.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Enabled is the factory default setting.</p>

Use	To
<b>Run Initial setup</b> Yes No	Run the setup wizard. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• After completing the setup wizard by selecting Done at the country or region selection screen, the default becomes No.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Sizes</b> US Metric	Specify the unit of measurement for paper sizes. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• U.S. is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The initial setting is determined by your country or region selection in the initial setup wizard.</li> </ul>
<b>Scan to PC Port Range</b> [port range]	Specify a valid port range for printers behind a port blocking firewall. The valid ports are specified by two sets of numbers separated by a semicolon. <b>Note:</b> 9751:12000 is the factory default setting.
<b>Home screen customization</b> Change Language Copy Fax Fax shortcuts E-mail shortcuts FTP shortcuts Search held jobs Held jobs Bookmarks Jobs by user	Change the icons and buttons that appear on the printer display. For each icon or button, select from the following options: Display Do not display <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display is the factory default setting for Copy, Fax, Search Held Jobs, and Held jobs.</li> <li>• Do not display is the factory default setting for Change Language, Fax shortcuts, E-mail shortcuts, FTP shortcuts, Bookmarks, and Jobs by user.</li> </ul>
<b>One Page Copy</b> Off On	Set copies from the printer to only one page at a time. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Allow Background Removal</b> On Off	Specify whether image background removal is allowed in copy, and fax jobs. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. The background of the image will be removed.
<b>Allow Custom Job Scans</b> On Off	Scan multiple jobs to one file. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. If On is selected, then Allow Custom Job Scans can be enabled for specific jobs.
<b>Scanner Jam recovery</b> Job Level page Level	Specify how a scan job should be reloaded if a paper jam occurs in the ADF. <b>Note:</b> Job Level is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<p><b>Alarms</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alarm Control</li> <li>Cartridge Alarm</li> </ul>	<p>Set an alarm to sound when the printer requires user intervention. When activated, Alarm Control lets you set the number of times that the alarm sounds, while Cartridge Alarm lets you stop printing when a cartridge-low condition occurs.</p> <p>For each alarm type, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Single</li> <li>Continuous</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control. This sounds three quick beeps.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for Cartridge Alarm. This means no alarm will sound.</li> <li>• Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sleep Mode</li> <li>Disabled</li> <li>1–120 min</li> </ul>	<p>Set the amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it goes into a reduced power state.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “30 min” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled appears only when Energy Conserve is set to Off.</li> <li>• Lower settings conserve more energy, but may require longer warm-up times.</li> <li>• Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Timeout</li> <li>Disabled</li> <li>1 hour</li> <li>2 hours</li> <li>3 hours</li> <li>6 hours</li> <li>1 day</li> <li>2 days</li> <li>3 days</li> <li>1 week</li> <li>2 weeks</li> <li>1 month</li> </ul>	<p>Set the amount of time the printer waits before it goes to Hibernate mode.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabled is the factory default setting for printers except for European Union countries and Switzerland.</li> <li>• “3 days” is the factory default setting for Class B printers in all European Union countries and Switzerland.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hibernate Timeout on Connection</li> <li>Hibernate</li> <li>Do Not Hibernate</li> </ul>	<p>Set the printer to hibernate mode when there is an active Ethernet connection.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Do Not Hibernate is the factory default setting.</p>

Use	To
<b>Timeouts</b> Screen Timeout 15–300 sec	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits before returning the display to the Ready state. <b>Note:</b> “30 sec” is the factory default setting.
<b>Timeouts</b> Print Timeout Disabled 1–255 sec	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “90 sec” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the scanner checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting.</li> <li>• Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>Timeouts</b> Wait Timeout Disabled 15–65535 sec	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “40 sec” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>Error Recovery</b> Auto Reboot Reboot when idle Reboot always Reboot never	Automatically reboot the printer back into the normal operation. <b>Note:</b> “Reboot when idle” is the factory default setting.
<b>Error Recovery</b> Max Auto Reboots 1-20	Determine the number of automatic reboots the printer can perform. <b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Print Recovery</b> Auto Continue Disabled 5–255	Let the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when these are not resolved within the specified time period. <b>Note:</b> Disabled is the factory default setting.
<b>Print Recovery</b> Jam Recovery On Off Auto	Specify whether the printer reprints jammed pages. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages.</li> <li>• Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Print Recovery</b> Jam Assist On Off	Set the printer to automatically check for jammed paper. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Print Recovery</b> Page Protect Off On	Let the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. This prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to process the whole page so that the entire page prints.</li> </ul>
<b>Press Sleep Button</b> Do nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determine how the printer, while in idle state, reacts to a short press of the Sleep button. <b>Note:</b> Sleep is the factory default setting.
<b>Press and Hold Sleep Button</b> Do nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determine how the printer, while in idle state, reacts to a long press of the Sleep button. <b>Note:</b> “Do nothing” is the factory default setting.
<b>Factory Defaults</b> Do Not Restore Restore Now	Return the printer settings to the factory default settings. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. This keeps the user-defined settings.</li> <li>• Restore Now returns all scanner settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted.</li> </ul>
<b>Custom Home Message</b> Off IP Address Hostname Contact Name Location Zero Configuration Name Custom Text [x]	Create a custom home message that appears during warnings, printer errors and the Home Prime/Status state. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The maximum number of characters for a custom message is 40 (NV 80 bytes). If the custom message requires more than 2 lines, then normal scrolling behavior will occur.</li> <li>• When the Home Prime/Status has a custom message and there is a warning with custom message, the Home Prime/Status condition is shown first.</li> </ul>

## Copy Settings menu

Use	To
<b>Content Type</b> Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
<b>Content Source</b> Black/White Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. <b>Note:</b> Black/White Laser is the factory default setting.
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> 1 sided to 1 sided 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Specify whether an original document is two-sided (duplex) or one-sided, and then specify whether the copy should be two-sided or one-sided. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1 sided to 1 sided</b>—The original document has print on one side and the copy will also have print on one side.</li> <li>• <b>1 sided to 2 sided</b>—The original document has print on one side, while the copy will have print on both sides.</li> <li>• <b>2 sided to 1 sided</b>—The original document has print on both sides, while the copy will have print on just one side.</li> <li>• <b>2 sided to 2 sided</b>—The original document has print on both sides, and the copy will also have print on both sides.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver</b> Off 2-up Portrait 2-up Landscape 4-up Portrait 4-up Landscape	Copy two or four sheets of a document on one page. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Print Page Borders</b> On Off	Specify whether or not a border is printed. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Collate</b> (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (1,2,3) (1,2,3)	Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies. <b>Note:</b> “(1,2,3) (1,2,3)” is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<p><b>Original Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Oficio (Mexico)</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>Auto Size Sense</li> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> <li>Custom Scan Size [x]</li> <li>Book Original</li> <li>Business Card</li> <li>3 x 5 in.</li> <li>4 x 6 in.</li> <li>ID Card</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper size of the original document.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the U.S. factory default setting.</li> <li>• A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Copy To Source</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tray [x]</li> <li>Auto Size Match</li> <li>Manual Feeder</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper source for copy jobs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Transparency Separators</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul>	<p>Place a sheet of paper between transparencies.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Separator Sheets</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Between Copies</li> <li>Between Jobs</li> <li>Between Pages</li> </ul>	<p>Place a sheet of paper between pages, copies, or jobs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Separator Sheet Source</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tray [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the separator sheet source.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Darkness</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1–9</li> </ul>	<p>Lighten or darken the print on the copy.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Number of Copies</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1–999</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the number of copies for the copy job.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 1 is the factory default setting.</p>

Use	To
<b>Overlay</b> Confidential Copy Draft Urgent Custom Off	Specify the overlay text printed on each page of the copy job. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Allow priority copies</b> On Off	Allow interruption of a print job to copy a page or document. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b> On Off	Save custom copy settings as shortcuts. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Background Removal</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a copy. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>Auto Center</b> Off On	Automatically align the content at the center of the page. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Contrast</b> 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast used for the copy job. <b>Note:</b> “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
<b>Mirror Image</b> Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Negative Image</b> Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Shadow Detail</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a copy. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>ADF Skew Fix</b> Off On	Correct slight skew in the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Scan edge to edge</b> Off On	Specify if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Sharpness</b> 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness of a copy. <b>Note:</b> 3 is the factory default setting.
<b>Sample Copy</b> Off On	Create a sample copy of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## Fax Settings menu

### Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu

Analog Fax Setup mode sends the fax job through a telephone line.

Use	To
<b>Fax Name</b>	Specify the name of the fax in the printer.
<b>Fax Number</b>	Specify the number assigned to the fax.
<b>Fax ID</b> Fax Name Fax Number	Specify how the fax is identified.
<b>Enable Manual Fax</b> On Off	Set the printer to fax manually, which requires a line splitter and a telephone handset. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Use a regular telephone to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number.</li> <li>• Press # 0 on the numeric keypad to go directly to the Manual Fax function.</li> </ul>
<b>Memory Use</b> All receive Mostly receive Equal Mostly send All send	Define the allocation of non-volatile memory between sending and receiving fax jobs. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Equal” is the factory default setting. This splits the memory for sending and receiving fax jobs into equal amounts.</li> <li>• “Mostly send” specifies that most of the memory is set to send fax jobs.</li> <li>• “All send” specifies that all the memory is set to send fax jobs.</li> <li>• “All receive” specifies that all the memory is set to receive fax jobs.</li> <li>• “Mostly receive” specifies that most of the memory is set to receive fax jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>Cancel Faxes</b> Allow Don't Allow	Specify whether or not the printer cancels fax jobs. <b>Note:</b> Allow is the factory default setting.
<b>Caller ID</b> Off Primary Alternate	Specify the type of caller ID being used.
<b>Fax number masking</b> Off From left From right	Specify the direction from where digits are masked in an outgoing fax number. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The number of characters masked is determined by the “Digits to mask” setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Digits to Mask</b> 0–58	Specify the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<p><b>Fax Cover Page</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fax Cover Page                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off by default</li> <li>On by default</li> <li>Never use</li> <li>Always use</li> </ul> </li> <li>Include to Field                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> </li> <li>Include from Field                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> </li> <li>Include Message Field                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> </li> <li>Include Logo                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Configure the fax cover page.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> “Off by default” is the factory default setting for all Fax Cover Page options.</p>

**Fax Send Settings**

Use	To
<p><b>Resolution</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Standard</li> <li>Fine 200 dpi</li> <li>Super Fine 300 dpi</li> </ul>	<p>Specify quality in dots per inch (dpi). A higher resolution gives better print quality, but increases the fax transmission time for outgoing faxes.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Standard is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Original Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Oficio (Mexico)</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>Auto Size Sense</li> <li>Mixed Sizes                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> </ul> </li> <li>Custom Scan Size [x]                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Book Original</li> <li>Business Card</li> <li>3 x 5 in.</li> <li>4 x 6 in.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper size of the original document.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Mixed Sizes is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</p>

Use	To
<b>Content Type</b> Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Text is the factory default setting.
<b>Content Source</b> Black/White Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. <b>Note:</b> Black/White Laser is the factory default setting.
<b>Darkness</b> 1–9	Lighten or darken the output. <b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Dial Prefix</b>	Enter a dialing prefix, such as 99. A numeric entry field is provided.
<b>Automatic Redial</b> 0–9	Specify the number of times the printer tries to send the fax to a specified number. <b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Redial frequency</b> 1–200	Specify the number of minutes between redials. <b>Note:</b> 3 is the factory default setting.
<b>Behind a PABX</b> Yes No	Enable or disable switchboard blind dialing without a dial tone. <b>Note:</b> No is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable ECM</b> Yes No	Enable or disable Error Correction Mode for fax jobs. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable Fax Scans</b> On Off	Fax files that are scanned at the printer. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Driver to fax</b> Yes No	Allow the printer driver to send fax jobs. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b> On Off	Save fax numbers as shortcuts in the printer. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Dial Mode</b> Tone Pulse	Specify the dialing sound, either as a tone or a pulse. <b>Note:</b> Tone is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Max Speed</b> 2400 4800 9600 14400 33600	Specify the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are sent. <b>Note:</b> 33600 is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom Job scanning</b> On Off	Scan a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single file. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Background Removal</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>Contrast</b> 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast in the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
<b>Mirror Image</b> Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Negative Image</b> Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Shadow Detail</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>ADF Skew Fix</b> Auto Off On	Correct the slight skew in the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Sharpness</b> 1–5	Adjust the sharpness of a fax. <b>Note:</b> 3 is the factory default setting.

### Fax Receive Settings

Use	To
<b>Enable Fax Receive</b> On Off	Allow the printer to receive fax jobs. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Fax Job Waiting</b> None Toner Toner and Supplies	Remove fax jobs from the print queue when the job requires specific unavailable resources. <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Rings to Answer</b> 1–25	Specify the number of rings before answering an incoming fax job. <b>Note:</b> 3 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Auto Reduction</b> On Off	Scale an incoming fax job so that it fits the size of the paper loaded in the designated fax source. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Paper Source</b> Auto Tray [x] Multi-Purpose Feeder	Specify the paper source for printing incoming fax jobs. <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting.
<b>Fax Footer</b> On Off	Print the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Max Speed</b> 2400 4800 9600 14400 33600	Specify the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are received. <b>Note:</b> 33600 is the factory default setting.
<b>Fax Forwarding</b> Print Print and Forward Forward	Enable forwarding of received faxes to another recipient. <b>Note:</b> Print is the factory default setting.
<b>Forward to</b> Fax E-mail FTP LDSS eSF	Specify the type of recipient to which faxes will be forwarded. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fax is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu is available only from the printer Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>
<b>Forward to Shortcut</b>	Enter the shortcut number which matches the recipient type (Fax, E-mail, FTP, LDSS, or eSF).
<b>Block No Name Fax</b> Off On	Enable blocking of incoming faxes sent from devices with no fax ID specified. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

### Fax Log Settings

Use	To
<b>Transmission Log</b> Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Enable printing of a transmission log after each fax job. <b>Note:</b> Print log is the factory default setting.
<b>Receive Error Log</b> Print Never Print on Error	Enable printing of a receive error log following a receive error. <b>Note:</b> Print Never is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Auto Print Logs</b> On Off	Enable automatic printing of fax logs. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Logs print after every 200 fax jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>Log Paper Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specify the source of the paper used for printing logs. <b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Logs Display</b> Remote Station Name Dialed Number	Specify whether printed logs display the dialed number or fax name returned. <b>Note:</b> Remote Station Name is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable Job Log</b> On Off	Enable access to the Fax Job log. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable Call Log</b> On Off	Enable access to the Fax Call log. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

### Speaker Settings

Use	To
<b>Speaker Mode</b> Always Off On until Connected Always On	Specify the mode of the speaker. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “On until Connected” is the factory default setting. A sound is issued until the fax connection is made.</li> <li>• “Always On” turns the speaker on.</li> <li>• “Always Off” turns the speaker off.</li> </ul>
<b>Speaker Volume</b> High Low	Control the volume setting. <b>Note:</b> High is the factory default setting.
<b>Ringer Volume</b> Off On	Control the fax speaker ringer volume. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

**Answer On**

Use	To
All Rings Single Ring Only Double Ring Only Triple Ring Only Single or Double Rings Only Single or Triple Rings Only Double or Triple Rings Only	Specify ring patterns when the printer is answering calls. <b>Note:</b> All Rings is the factory default setting.

**E-mail Settings menu**

Use	To
<b>E-mail Server Setup</b> Send me a copy Never appears On by default Off by default Always On	Send a copy of the e-mail to the sender. <b>Note:</b> "Never appears" is the factory default setting.
<b>E-mail Server Setup</b> Max E-mail size 0–65535 KB	Specify the maximum e-mail size in kilobytes. <b>Note:</b> E-mails larger than the specified size are not sent.
<b>Format</b> PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specify the format of the scanned file. <b>Note:</b> PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
<b>PDF Version</b> 1.2–1.6 A–1a	Set the version of the PDF file that will be scanned for e-mailing. <b>Note:</b> 1.5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Content Type</b> Graphics Text Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
<b>Content Source</b> Black/White Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. <b>Note:</b> Black/White Laser is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Resolution</b> 75 dpi 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Specify the resolution of the scan in dots per inch. <b>Note:</b> 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
<b>Darkness</b> 1–9	Lighten or darken the output. <b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.
<b>Original Size</b> Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in.	Specify the paper size of the document being scanned. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• Letter is the US factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> Off Long edge Short edge	Specify the page orientation of text and graphics. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>• Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>JPEG Quality</b> Best for content 5–90	Set the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality of the image. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Best for content” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• 5 reduces the file size and quality of the image.</li> <li>• 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large.</li> <li>• This menu setting applies to all scan functions.</li> </ul>
<b>Text Default</b> 5–90	Set the quality of a text image in relation to file size and quality of the image. <b>Note:</b> 75 is the factory default setting.
<b>Text/Photo Default</b> 5–90	Set the quality of a text or photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image. <b>Note:</b> 75 is the factory default setting.
<b>Photo Default</b> 5–90	Set the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image. <b>Note:</b> 50 is the factory default setting.
<b>E-mail images sent as</b> Attachment Web Link	Specify how the images are sent. <b>Note:</b> Attachment is the factory default setting.
<b>Use Multi-Page Tiff</b> On Off	Provide a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-e-mail job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu applies to all scan functions.</li> </ul>
<b>Transmission Log</b> Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specify whether or not the transmission log prints. <b>Note:</b> Print log is the factory default setting.
<b>Log Paper Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specify the paper source for printing e-mail logs. <b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom Job scanning</b> On Off	Copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b> On Off	Save e-mail addresses as shortcuts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the Save as Shortcut button does not appear on the e-mail Destination screen.</li> </ul>
<b>Background Removal</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Contrast</b> 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast of the output. <b>Note:</b> “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
<b>Mirror Image</b> Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Negative Image</b> Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Shadow Detail</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>ADF Skew Fix</b> Auto Off On	Correct slight skew in the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Scan edge to edge</b> Off On	Specify whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Sharpness</b> 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness on a scanned image. <b>Note:</b> 3 is the factory default setting.
<b>Use cc:/bcc:</b> Off On	Enable the use of the cc: and bcc: fields. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## FTP Settings menu

Use	To
<b>Format</b> PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF (.pdf) TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specify the format of the file for FTP sending. <b>Note:</b> PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
<b>PDF Version</b> 1.2–1.6 A–1a	Set the version level of the PDF file for FTP sending. <b>Note:</b> 1.5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Content Type</b> Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Text/Photo is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Content Source</b> Black/White Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. <b>Note:</b> Black/White Laser is the factory default setting.
<b>Resolution</b> 75 dpi 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Specify the quality of the scan in dots per inch (dpi). <b>Note:</b> 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
<b>Darkness</b> 1–9	Lighten or darken the output. <b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.
<b>Original Size</b> Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in.	Specify the paper size of the original document. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the US factory default setting.</li> <li>• A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> Off Long Edge Short Edge	Specify the page orientation of text and graphics. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Long Edge sets binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>• Short Edge sets binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<b>JPEG Quality</b> Best for content 5–90	Set the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to the file size and quality of the image. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Best for content” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• 5 reduces the image quality and the file size.</li> <li>• 90 produces the best image quality at an increased file size.</li> <li>• This menu setting applies to all scan functions.</li> </ul>
<b>Text Default</b> 5–90	Set the quality of the text in relation to the file size and quality of the image. <b>Note:</b> 75 is the factory default setting.
<b>Text/Photo Default</b> 5–90	Set the quality of a text or photo image in relation to the file size and quality of the image. <b>Note:</b> 75 is the factory default setting.
<b>Photo Default</b> 5–90	Set the quality of a photo image in relation to the file size and quality of the image. <b>Note:</b> 50 is the factory default setting.
<b>Use Multi-Page TIFF</b> On Off	Choose between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu setting applies to all scan functions.</li> </ul>
<b>Transmission Log</b> Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specify whether or not the transmission log prints. <b>Note:</b> “Print log” is the factory default setting.
<b>Log Paper Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specify a paper source when printing FTP logs. <b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom Job Scanning</b> On Off	Copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single scan job. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b> On Off	Enable shortcut creation for FTP addresses. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Background Removal</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a copy. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>Contrast</b> 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast of the output. <b>Note:</b> “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
<b>Mirror Image</b> Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Negative Image</b> Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Shadow Detail</b> -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>ADF Skew Fix</b> Auto Off On	Correct slight skew in the scanned image. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Scan edge to edge</b> Off On	Specify whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Sharpness</b> 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness of a scanned image <b>Note:</b> 3 is the factory default setting.

## Print Settings

### Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Printer Language</b> PCL Emulation PS Emulation	Set the default printer language. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PS Emulation is the factory default printer language.</li> <li>• Setting a printer language as the default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.</li> </ul>
<b>Print Area</b> Normal Whole Page	Set the logical and physical printable area. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.

Use	To
<b>Resource Save</b> On Off	Specify how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in the RAM, when the printer receives a job that requires more memory than is available.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. This sets the printer to retain the downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs.</li> <li>• On retains the downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, then <b>Memory Full [38]</b> appears, and downloads are not deleted.</li> </ul>

## Finishing menu

Use	To
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> 1 sided 2 sided	Specify whether two-sided (duplex) printing is set as the user default setting for all print jobs.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “1 sided” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• You can set two-sided printing from the software program.                For Windows users:                Click <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then click <b>Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup</b>.                For Macintosh users:                Choose <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.</li> </ul>
<b>Duplex Binding</b> Long Edge Short Edge	Define the way two-sided pages are bound and printed.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long Edge is the factory default setting. This assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>• Short Edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<b>Copies</b> 1–999	Specify the default number of copies for each print job. <b>Note:</b> 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Blank Pages</b> Do Not Print Print	Specify whether or not blank pages are inserted in a print job. <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
<b>Collate</b> (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (1,2,3) (1,2,3)	Stack the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies. <b>Note:</b> “(1,2,3) (1,2,3)” is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Separator Sheets</b> Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specify whether or not blank separator sheets are inserted. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to "(1,2,3) (1,2,3)." If Collate is set to "(1,1,1) (2,2,2)," then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>• Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of a print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specify the paper source for separator sheets. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to "Cassette" for Manual Feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver</b> Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the number of pages per sheet is selected, each page is scaled so that the number of pages you want can be displayed on the sheet.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Ordering</b> Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specify the order in which pages are printed on a single sheet when using Paper Saver. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horizontal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Positioning depends on the number of pages and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Orientation</b> Auto Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation in which pages are printed on a single sheet. <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.
<b>Paper Saver Border</b> None Solid	Print a border when using Paper Saver. <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.

## Quality menu

Use	To
<b>Print Resolution</b> 300 dpi 600 dpi 1200 dpi 1200 Image Q 2400 Image Q	Specify the printed output resolution in dots per inch. <b>Note:</b> 600 dpi is the factory default setting.
<b>Pixel Boost</b> Off Fonts Horizontally Vertically Both directions Isolated	Enable more pixels to print in clusters for clarity, in order to enhance images horizontally or vertically, or to enhance fonts. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Toner Darkness</b> 1–10	Lighten or darken the printed output. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhance Fine Lines</b> On Off	Enable a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• You can set this option from the printer software. For Windows users, click <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then click <b>Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup</b>. For Macintosh users, choose <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then adjust the settings from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.</li> <li>• To set this option using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in the Web browser address field.</li> </ul>
<b>Gray Correction</b> Auto Off	Automatically adjust the contrast enhancement applied to images. <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting.
<b>Brightness</b> -6 to 6	Adjust the printed output either by lightening or darkening it. You can conserve toner by lightening the output. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>Contrast</b> 0–5	Adjust the contrast of printed objects. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.

**XPS menu**

Use	To
<b>Print Error Pages</b> Off On	Print a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

**PDF menu**

Use	To
<b>Scale to Fit</b> Yes No	Scale page content to fit the selected paper size. <b>Note:</b> No is the factory default setting.
<b>Annotations</b> Do Not Print Print	Print annotations in a PDF. <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

**PCL Emul menu**

Use	To
<b>Font Source</b> Resident Download All	Specify the set of fonts used in the Font Name menu. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Resident” is the factory default setting. It shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in the RAM.</li> <li>• “Download” shows all the fonts downloaded in the RAM.</li> <li>• “All” shows all fonts available to any option.</li> </ul>
<b>Font Name</b> Courier 10	Identify a specific font and where it is stored. <b>Note:</b> Courier 10 is the factory default setting.
<b>Symbol Set</b> 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specify the symbol set for each font name. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• A symbol set is a set of alphabetical and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs, such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Change the point size for scalable typographic fonts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Point size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 0.014 of an inch. This can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Pitch 0.08–100.00	Specify the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (dpi). This can be increased or decreased in 0.01-dpi increments.</li> <li>• For non-scalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but cannot be changed.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of text and graphics on a page. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Portrait is the factory default setting. It prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page.</li> <li>• Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Lines per Page 1–255	Specify the number of lines that print on each page. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting.</li> <li>• The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the paper size and orientation before setting Lines per Page.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Set the printer to print on A4-size paper. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 198 mm is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow the printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Auto CR after LF On Off	Specify whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Auto LF after CR On Off	Specify whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<p><b>Tray Renumber</b></p> <p>Assign MP Feeder Off None 0–199</p> <p>Assign Tray [x] Off None 0–199</p> <p>Assign Manual Paper Off None 0–199</p> <p>Assign Manual Envelope Off None 0–199</p>	<p>Configure the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays and feeders.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Off” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• “None” ignores the Select Paper Feed command. This option appears only when it is selected by the PCL 5e interpreter.</li> <li>• “0–199” allows a custom setting to be assigned.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Tray Renumber</b></p> <p>View Factory Defaults</p> <p>MPF Default = 8 T1 Default = 1 T2 Default = 4 T3 Default = 5 T4 Default = 20 T5 Default = 21 Env Default = 6 MPaper Default = 2 MEnv Default = 3</p>	<p>Show the factory default setting assigned to each tray or feeder.</p>
<p><b>Tray Renumber</b></p> <p>Restore Defaults</p> <p>Yes No</p>	<p>Restore all tray and feeder assignments to the factory default settings.</p>

### HTML menu

Use		To
<b>Font Name</b> Albertus MT Antique Olive Apple Chancery Arial MT Avant Garde Bodoni Bookman Chicago Clarendon Cooper Black Copperplate Coronet Courier Eurostile Garamond Geneva Gill Sans Goudy Helvetica Hoefler Text Intl CG Times Intl Courier Intl Univers	Joanna MT Letter Gothic Lubalin Graph Marigold MonaLisa Recut Monaco New CenturySbk New York Optima Oxford Palatino StempelGaramond Taffy Times TimesNewRoman Univers Zapf Chancery NewSansMTCS NewSansMTCT New SansMTJA NewSansMTKO	Set the default font for HTML documents.  <b>Note:</b> The Times font is used in HTML documents that do not specify a font.

Use	To
<b>Font Size</b> 1–255 pt	Set the default font size for HTML documents.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 pt is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Scale</b> 1–400%	Scale the default font for HTML documents.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100% is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape	Set the page orientation for HTML documents.  <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Margin Size</b> 8–255 mm	Set the page margin for HTML documents.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 19 mm is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Backgrounds</b> Do Not Print Print	Specify whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents.  <b>Note:</b> Print is the factory default setting.

## Image menu

Use	To
<b>Auto Fit</b> On Off	Select the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
<b>Invert</b> On Off	Invert bitonal monochrome images.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.</li> </ul>
<b>Scaling</b> Anchor Top Left Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width	Scale the image to fit the selected paper size.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Best Fit is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.</li> </ul>
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape Reverse Portrait Reverse Landscape	Set the image orientation.  <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.

## Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the multifunction printer (MFP) as PDF files. They contain information about using the printer and performing various tasks, including copying, scanning, and faxing.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer. Other translations are available at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Copy Guide	Provides information about making copies and changing settings

Menu item	Description
E-mail Guide	Provides information about sending e-mails using addresses, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Fax Guide	Provides information about sending faxes using fax numbers, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
FTP Guide	Provides information about scanning documents directly to an FTP server using an FTP address, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Print Defects Guide	Provides help in resolving repeating defects in copies or prints
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Supplies Guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

## Saving money and the environment

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com/environment](http://www.lexmark.com/environment)
- The Lexmark recycling program at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle)

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

### Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a single sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see "Using Eco-Mode."

#### Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see "Using recycled paper and other office papers" on page 44.

#### Conserving supplies

##### Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, then you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar.

##### Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

##### Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar to see how the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

##### Avoid paper jams

Correctly set the paper type and size to avoid paper jams. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 168.

# Saving energy

## Using Eco-Mode

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Eco-Mode**.

3 Select a setting.

Use	To
Off	Use the factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Settings that were changed when other modes were selected are reset to the factory default settings.</li> <li>• Off supports the performance specifications of the printer.</li> </ul>
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed.</li> <li>• The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.</li> <li>• The printer display is turned off when the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> <li>• Lights on the staple finisher and other optional finishers are turned off when the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> </ul>
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy and Paper modes.
Plain Paper	Enable the automatic two-sided (duplex) printing feature.

4 Click **Submit**.

## Reducing printer noise

Enable Quiet mode to reduce the printer noise.

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



2 Select a setting.

Use	To
On	Reduce printer noise. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print jobs process at a reduced speed.</li> <li>• Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. There is a short delay before the first page is printed.</li> <li>• The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off.</li> <li>• The printer ignores the Advance Start command.</li> </ul>
Off	Use factory default settings. <b>Note:</b> This setting supports the performance specifications of the printer.

3 Press .

## Adjusting Sleep mode

To save energy, decrease the number of minutes before the printer enters Sleep mode. Select from 1 to 120. The factory default setting is 30 minutes.

**Note:** The printer still accepts print jobs when in Sleep mode.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Navigate to:

**Settings > General Settings > Timeouts**

3 In the Sleep Mode field, enter the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep mode.

4 Click **Submit**.

### Using the printer control panel

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Settings** >  > **General Settings** >  > **Timeouts** >  > **Sleep Mode** > 

2 In the Sleep Mode field, select the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep mode.

3 Press .

## Using Hibernate mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low-power operating mode. When operating in Hibernate mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

### Notes:

- Make sure to wake the printer from Hibernate mode before sending a print job. A hard reset or a long press of the Sleep button wakes the printer from Hibernate mode.
- The Hibernate mode can be scheduled. For more information, see “Using Schedule Power Modes” on page 150.
- If the printer is in Hibernate mode, the Embedded Web Server is disabled.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Sleep Button Settings**.
- 3 From the “Press Sleep Button” or “Press and Hold Sleep Button” drop-down menu, select **Hibernate**.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

## Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Settings** >  > **Settings** >  > **General Settings** > 

- 2 Press the arrow buttons until **Press Sleep Button** or **Press and Hold Sleep Button** appears, and then press .
- 3 Press the arrow buttons until **Hibernate** appears, and then press .

### Notes:

- When Press Sleep Button is set to Hibernate, a short press of the Sleep button sets the printer to Hibernate mode.
- When Press and Hold Sleep Button is set to Hibernate, a long press of the Sleep button sets the printer to Hibernate mode.

## Adjusting the brightness of the printer display

To save energy, or if you have trouble reading the display, adjust its brightness settings.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings**.

**3** In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Using Schedule Power Modes

Schedule Power Modes lets the user schedule when the printer goes into a reduced power state or into the Ready state.

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings > Schedule Power Modes**.

**3** From the Action menu, select the power mode.

**4** From the Time menu, select the time.

**5** From the Day(s) menu, select the day or days.

**6** Click **Add**.

## Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com/environment](http://www.lexmark.com/environment)
- The Lexmark recycling program at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle)

## Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

**1** Go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).

**2** Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.

**3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**Note:** Printer supplies and hardware not listed in the Lexmark collection program may be recycled through your local recycling center. Contact your local recycling center to determine the items they accept.

## Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

## Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the prepaid shipping label. You can also do the following:

- 1 Go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
- 2 From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country or region.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

# Securing the printer

## Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that can store device and network settings, and user data.

Type of memory	Description
Volatile memory	Your printer uses standard <i>random access memory</i> (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print jobs.
Non-volatile memory	Your printer may use two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store operating system, device settings, and network information.

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is being decommissioned.
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization.
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is being sold to another organization.

## Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed in your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply turn off the printer.

## Erasing non-volatile memory

- **Individual settings, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions**—Erase information and settings by selecting **Wipe All Settings** in the Configuration menu.
- **Fax data**—Erase fax settings and data by selecting **Wipe All Settings** in the Configuration menu.

**1** Turn off the printer.

**2** Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully powered up, the printer displays a list of functions.

**3** Press the up or down arrow button until **Wipe All Settings** appears.

The printer will restart several times during this process.

**Note:** Wipe All Settings securely removes device settings, solutions, jobs, faxes, and passwords from the printer memory.

**4** Navigate to:

**Back > Exit Config Menu**

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

## Finding printer security information

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer cannot be accessed by unauthorized persons. For more information, visit the [Lexmark security Web page](#).

You can also see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* for additional information:

- 1 Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then click **SELECT YOUR PRODUCT**.
- 2 From the "Search by Product Category" section, navigate to **Software and Solutions > Other Applications**.
- 3 Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide*.

# Maintaining the printer

## Cleaning the printer parts

### Cleaning the printer

**Note:** You may need to perform this task after every few months.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Damage to the printer caused by improper handling is not covered by the printer warranty.

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the electrical outlet.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

- 2 Remove paper from the standard bin and multipurpose feeder.
- 3 Remove any dust, lint, and pieces of paper around the printer using a soft brush or vacuum.
- 4 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water, and use it to wipe the outside of the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not use household cleaners or detergents to prevent damage to the exterior of the printer.

- 5 Make sure all areas of the printer are dry before sending a new print job.

## Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass if you encounter print quality problems, such as streaks on copied or scanned images.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the scanner cover.



- 3 Clean all the areas shown, and then let them dry.



1	White underside of the scanner cover
2	Scanner glass
3	ADF glass
4	White underside of the ADF cover

- 4 Close the scanner cover.

## Checking the status of parts and supplies

A message appears on the display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

### Checking the status of parts and supplies on the printer control panel

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Status/Supplies** >  > **View Supplies** > 

### Checking the status of parts and supplies from the Embedded Web Server

**Note:** Make sure the computer and printer are connected to the same network.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Device Status** > **More Details**.

## Estimated number of remaining pages

The estimated number of remaining pages is based on the recent printing history of the printer. Its accuracy may vary significantly and is dependent on many factors, such as actual document content, print quality settings, and other printer settings.

The accuracy of the estimated number of remaining pages may decrease when the actual printing consumption is different from the historical printing consumption. Consider the variable level of accuracy before purchasing or replacing supplies based on the estimate. Until an adequate print history is obtained on the printer, initial estimates assume future supplies consumption based on the International Organization for Standardization\* test methods and page content.

\* Average continuous black declared cartridge yield in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752.

## Ordering supplies

To order parts and supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

The Lexmark Return Program lets you purchase Lexmark supplies at a discounted price in exchange for your agreement to use the supplies only once and return them only to Lexmark for remanufacturing or recycling.

## Using genuine Lexmark parts and supplies

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components. Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts is not covered by the warranty. All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or its associated components.

## Ordering toner cartridges

### Notes:

- The estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19752 standard.
- Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield.

Item	Return Program cartridge
<b>United States and Canada</b>	
Toner Cartridge	601
High Yield Toner Cartridge	601H
<b>European Union (EU), European Economic Area (EEA), and Switzerland</b>	
Toner Cartridge	602
High Yield Toner Cartridge	602H
<b>Asia Pacific region (includes Australia and New Zealand)</b>	
Toner Cartridge	603
High Yield Toner Cartridge	603H
<b>Latin America (includes Puerto Rico and Mexico)</b>	
Toner Cartridge	604
High Yield Toner Cartridge	604H
<b>Africa, Middle East, Central Eastern Europe (non-EU), and Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS)</b>	
Toner Cartridge	605
High Yield Toner Cartridge	605H
For more information on countries located in each region, visit <a href="http://www.lexmark.com/regions">www.lexmark.com/regions</a> .	

Item	Regular cartridge
<b>Worldwide</b>	
High Yield Toner Cartridge	600HA

## Ordering a maintenance kit

### Notes:

- Using certain types of paper may require more frequent replacement of the maintenance kit.
- The separator roller, fuser, pick rollers, transfer roller, and redrive assembly are all included in the maintenance kit and can be individually ordered and replaced if necessary.
- Contact your service representative to replace the maintenance kit.

### Recommended maintenance kits and part numbers

Maintenance kit	Part number
100-V maintenance kit*	40X9146
110-V maintenance kit	40X9135
220-V maintenance kit	40X9136
* This is available only in Japan.	

## Ordering an ADF separator pad

Order an ADF separator pad when the ADF fails to pick paper or picks more than one sheet of paper at a time. For information on replacing the ADF separator pad, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.

### Recommended part number

Part name	Part number
Separator pad	40X6247

## Ordering an imaging unit

Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may cause imaging unit parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner from toner cartridge.

For more information on replacing the imaging unit, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

Part name	Lexmark Return Program	Regular
Imaging unit	500Z	500ZA

## Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

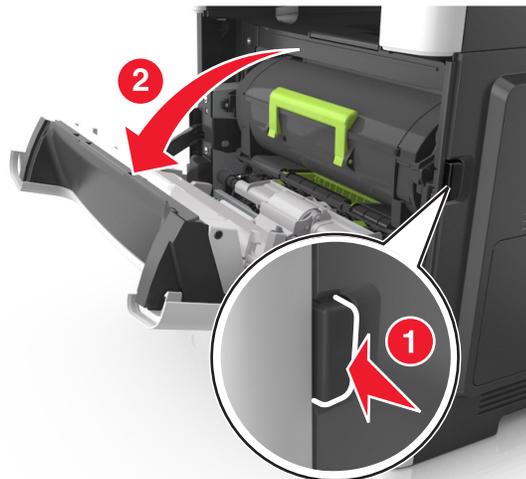
Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)
- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

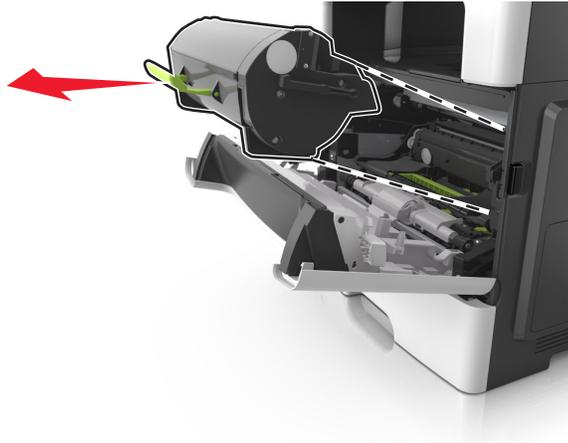
## Replacing supplies

### Replacing the toner cartridge

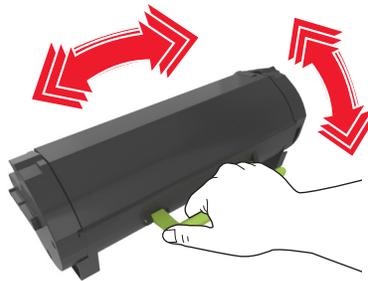
- 1 Press the button on the right side of the printer, and then open the front door.



- 2 Pull the toner cartridge out using the handle.

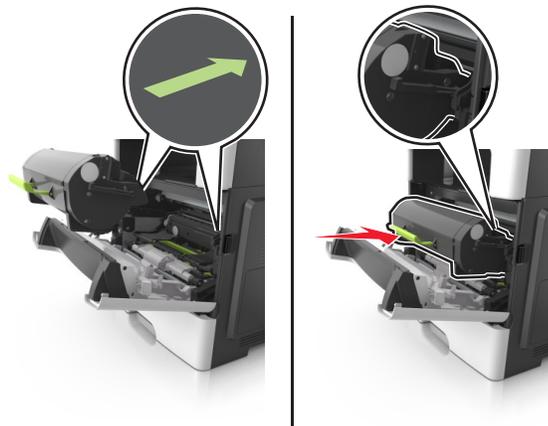


- 3 Unpack the toner cartridge, and then remove all packing materials.
- 4 Shake the new cartridge to redistribute the toner.



- 5 Insert the toner cartridge into the printer by aligning the side rails of the cartridge with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer.

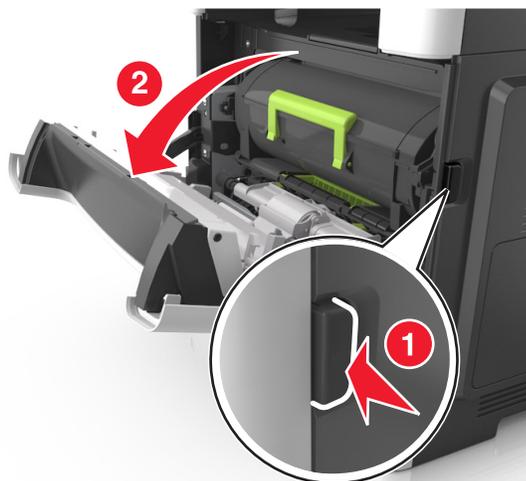
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.



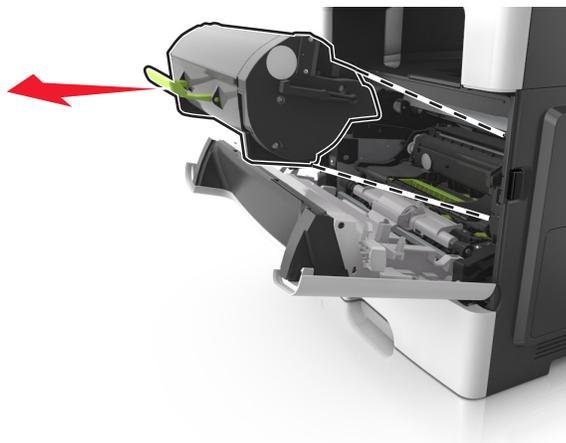
- 6 Close the front door.

## Replacing the imaging unit

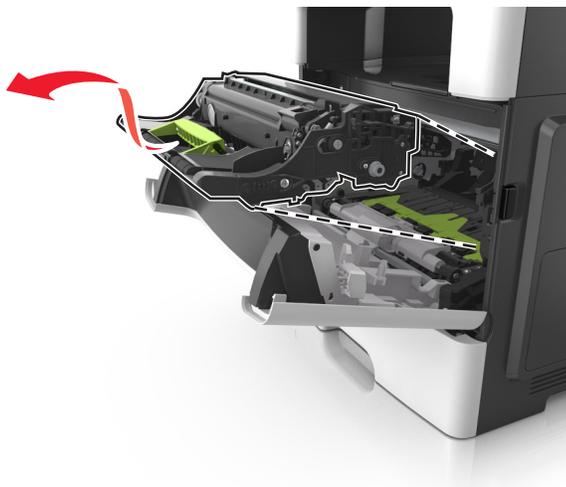
- 1 Press the button on the right side of the printer, and then open the front door.



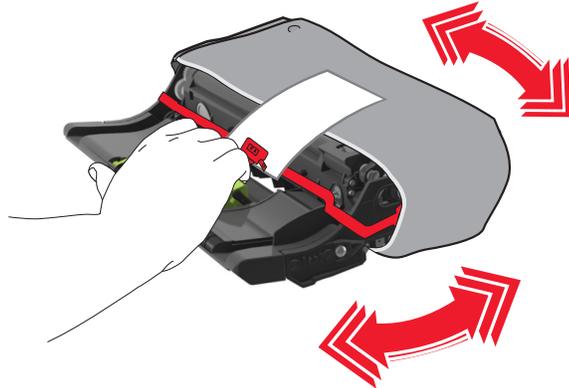
- 2 Pull the toner cartridge out using the handle.



- 3 Lift the green handle, and then pull the imaging unit out of the printer.



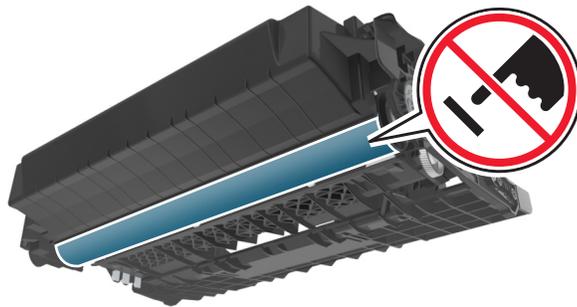
- 4 Unpack the new imaging unit, and then shake it.



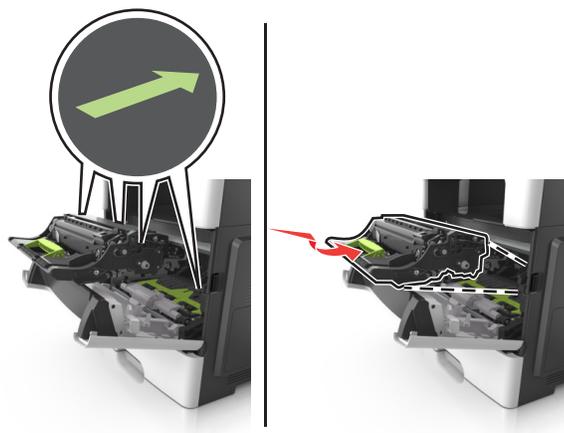
- 5 Remove all packing materials from the imaging unit.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

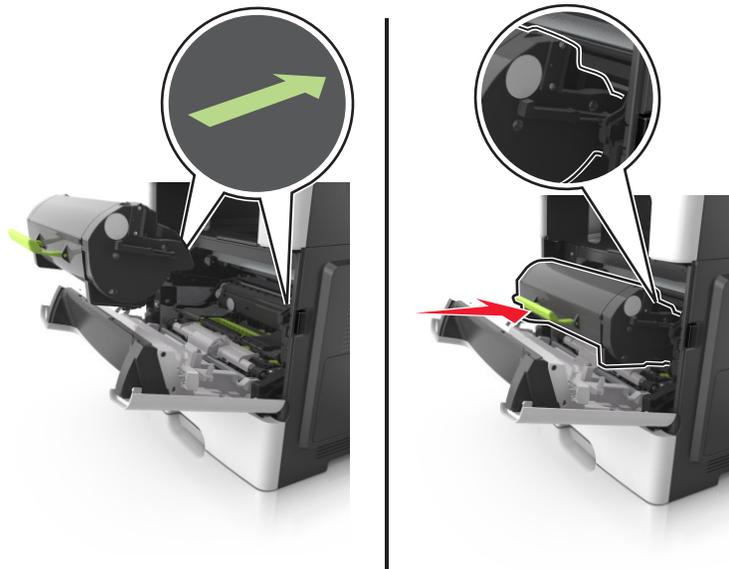
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.



- 6 Insert the imaging unit into the printer by aligning the arrows on the side rails of the imaging unit with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer.



- 7 Insert the toner cartridge into the printer by aligning the side rails of the cartridge with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer.



- 8 Close the front door.

## Moving the printer

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

### Before moving the printer

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- If an optional tray is installed, then remove it from the printer. To remove the optional tray, slide the latch on the right side of the tray toward the front of the tray until it *clicks* into place.



- Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.
- Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Before setting up the printer, make sure there is adequate clearance around it.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

## Moving the printer to another location

The printer and its hardware options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the hardware options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

## Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

# Managing the printer

## Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation CD* or the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Checking the virtual display

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Check the virtual display that appears at the top left corner of the screen.

The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel.

## Setting up e-mail alerts

Configure the printer to send you e-mail alerts when the supplies are getting low, when the paper needs to be changed or added, or when there is a paper jam.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings**.

- 3 From the Other Settings menu, click **E-mail Alert Setup**.

- 4 Select the items you want to be notified on, and then type the e-mail addresses.

- 5 Click **Submit**.

**Note:** For information on setting up the e-mail server, contact your system support person.

## Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, network, and supplies.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Reports**, and then click the type of report you want to view.

## Configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server

You can determine how you would like to be notified when supplies run nearly low, low, very low, or reach their end-of-life by setting the selectable alerts.

**Notes:**

- Selectable alerts can be set on the toner cartridge, imaging unit, and maintenance kit.
- All selectable alerts can be set for nearly low, low, and very low supply conditions. Not all selectable alerts can be set for the end-of-life supply condition. E-mail selectable alert is available for all supply conditions.
- The percentage of estimated remaining supply that prompts the alert can be set on some supplies for some supply conditions.

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > Print Settings > Supply Notifications**.

**3** From the drop-down menu for each supply, select one of the following notification options:

Notification	Description
Off	The normal printer behavior for all supplies occurs.
E-mail Only	The printer generates an e-mail when the supply condition is reached. The status of the supply appears on the menus page and status page.
Warning	The printer displays the warning message and generates an e-mail about the status of the supply. The printer does not stop when the supply condition is reached.
Continuable Stop <sup>1</sup>	The printer stops processing jobs when the supply condition is reached, and the user needs to press a button to continue printing.
Non Continuable Stop <sup>1,2</sup>	The printer stops processing jobs when the supply condition is reached. The supply must be replaced to continue printing.
<sup>1</sup> The printer generates an e-mail about the status of the supply when supply notification is enabled.	
<sup>2</sup> The printer stops when some supplies become empty to prevent damage.	

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Restoring factory default settings

If you want to keep a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings. For more information, see “Printing a menu settings page” on page 29.

If you want a more comprehensive method of restoring the printer factory default settings, then perform the Wipe All Settings option. For more information, see “Erasing non-volatile memory” on page 152.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in the flash memory or in printer hard disk are not affected.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > Settings > Settings >  > General Settings >  > Factory Defaults >  > Restore Now > 

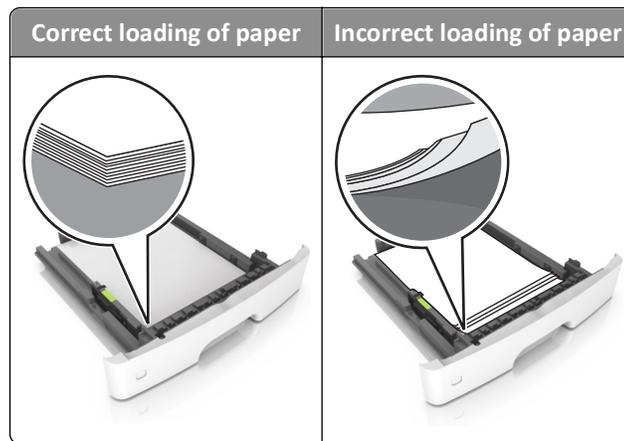
## Clearing jams

Jam error messages appear on the printer display and include the area of the printer where the jam occurred. When there is more than one jam, the number of jammed pages is displayed.

## Avoiding jams

### Load paper properly

- Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.



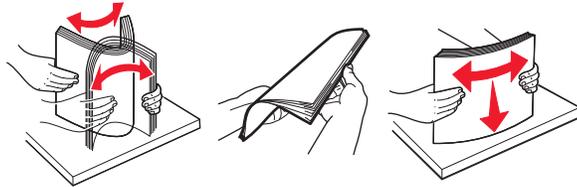
- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it before printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height is below the maximum paper fill indicator.
- Do not slide the paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray firmly into the printer after loading paper.

### Use recommended paper

- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper before loading it.



- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper according to manufacturer recommendations.

## Understanding jam messages and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location and information to clear the jam appears on the printer display. Open the doors, covers, and trays indicated on the display to remove the jam.

### Notes:

- When Jam Assist is set to On, the printer automatically flushes blank pages or pages with partial prints to the standard bin after a jammed page has been cleared. Check your printed output stack for discarded pages.
- When Jam Recovery is set to On or Auto, the printer reprints jammed pages. However, the Auto setting does not guarantee that the page will reprint.

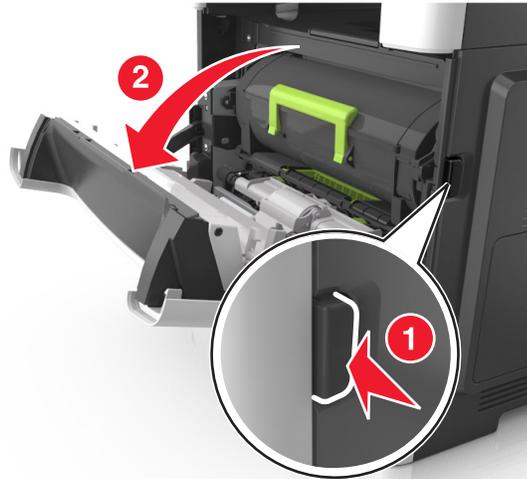


	Jam access area	Printer control panel message	What to do
1	Automatic document feeder (ADF)	[x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx]	Remove all paper from the ADF tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
2	Standard bin	[x]-page jam, clear standard bin. [20y.xx]	Remove the jammed paper.
3	Front door	[x]-page jam, open front door. [20y.xx]	Open the front door, then remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit, and then the jammed paper.
4	Multipurpose feeder	[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder. [250.xx]	Remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder, and then remove the jammed paper.
5	Tray 1	[x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [23y.xx]	Pull out tray 1 completely, then push the front duplex flap down, and then remove the jammed paper. <b>Note:</b> You may need to open the rear door to clear some 23y.xx paper jams.
6	Tray [x]	[x]-page jam, remove tray [x]. [24y.xx]	Pull out the indicated tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
7	Rear door	[x]-page jam, open rear door. [20y.xx]	Open the rear door, and then remove the jammed paper.

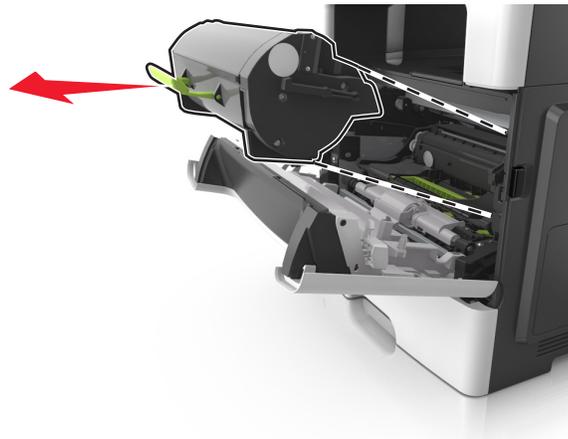
## [x]-page jam, open front door. [20y.xx]

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

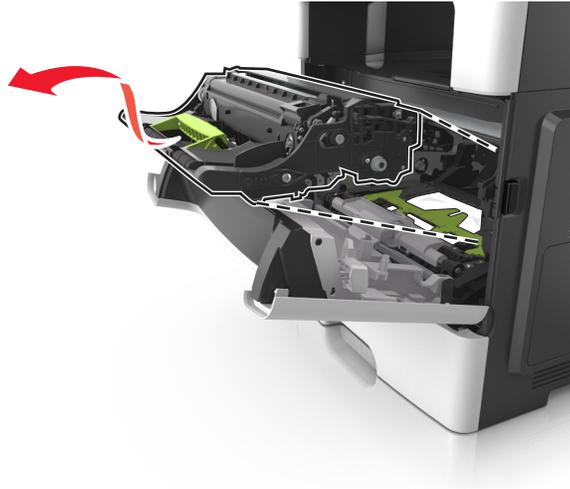
- 1 Press the button on the right side of the printer, and then open the front door.



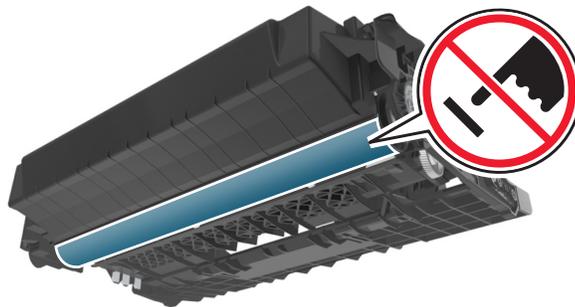
- 2 Pull the toner cartridge out using the handle.



- 3 Lift the green handle, and then pull the imaging unit out of the printer.



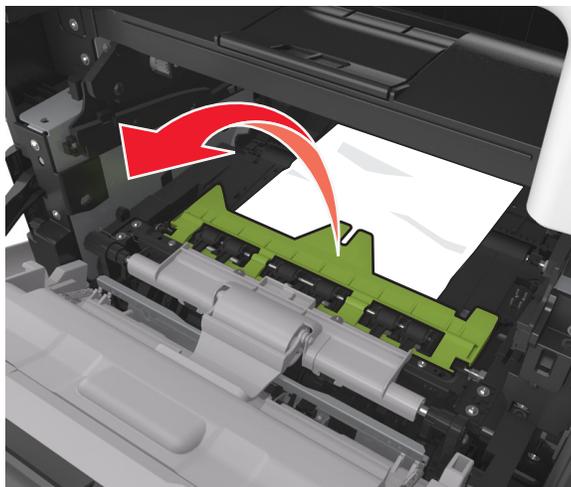
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the shiny blue photoconductor drum under the imaging unit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.



- 4 Place the imaging unit aside on a flat, smooth surface.

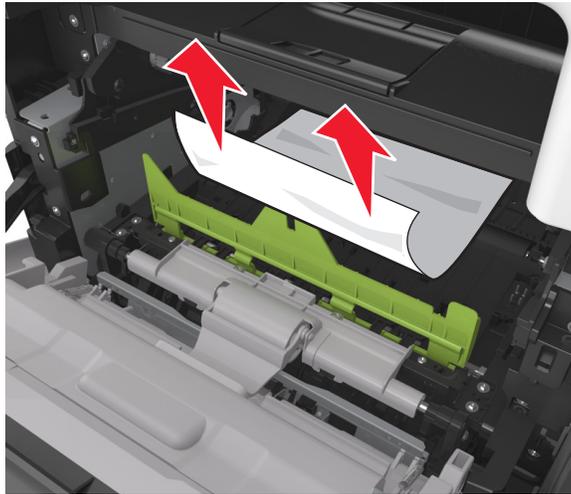
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

- 5 Lift the green flap in front of the printer.

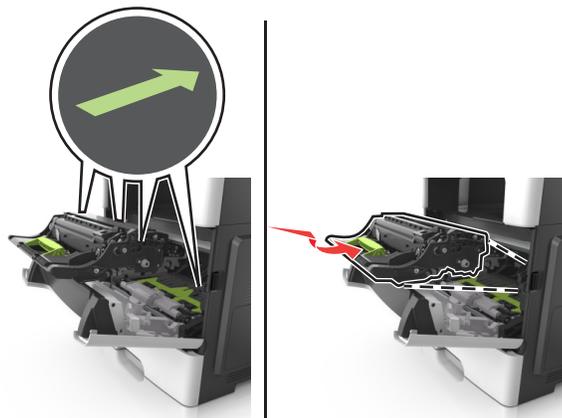


- 6 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

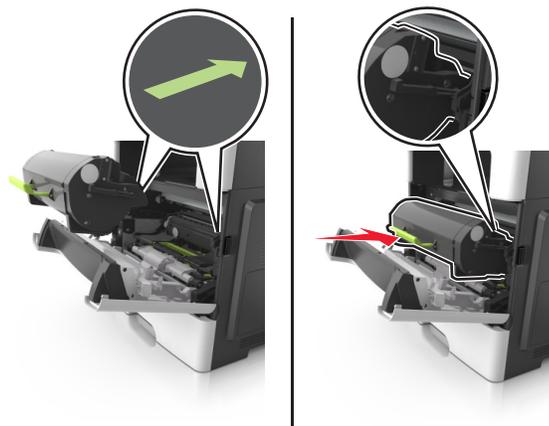
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 7 Insert the imaging unit by aligning the arrows on the side rails of the unit with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer, and then insert the imaging unit into the printer.



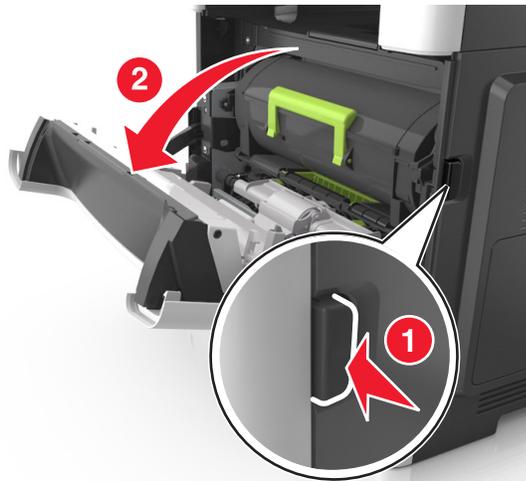
- 8 Insert the toner cartridge by aligning the side rails of the cartridge with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer, and then insert the cartridge into the printer.



- 9 Close the front door.
- 10 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** > **OK** > **Clear the jam**, press **OK** > **OK**.

## [x]-page jam, open rear door. [20y.xx]

- 1 Open the front door to loosen the jammed paper in the rear door.



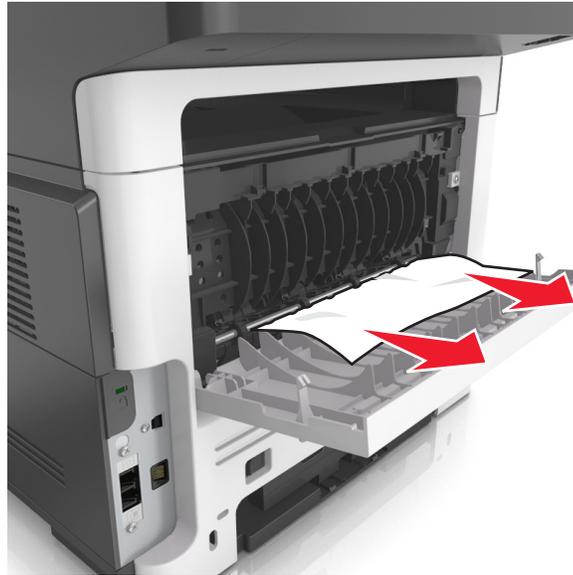
- 2 Gently pull down the rear door.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



- 3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

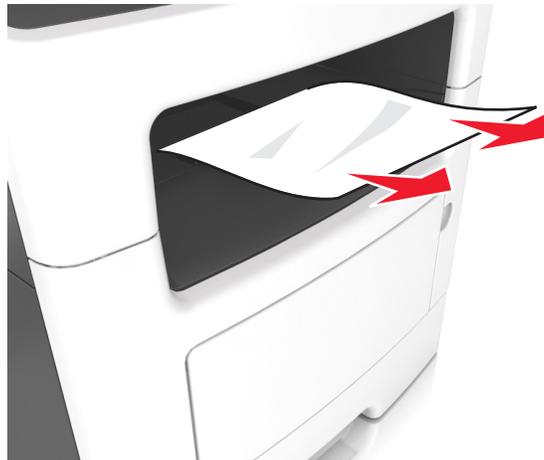
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 4 Close the rear door, and then the front door.
- 5 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** >  > **Clear the jam**, press **OK** > .

## [x]-page jam, clear standard bin. [20y.xx]

- 1 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.  
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 2 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** >  > **Clear the jam**, press **OK** > .

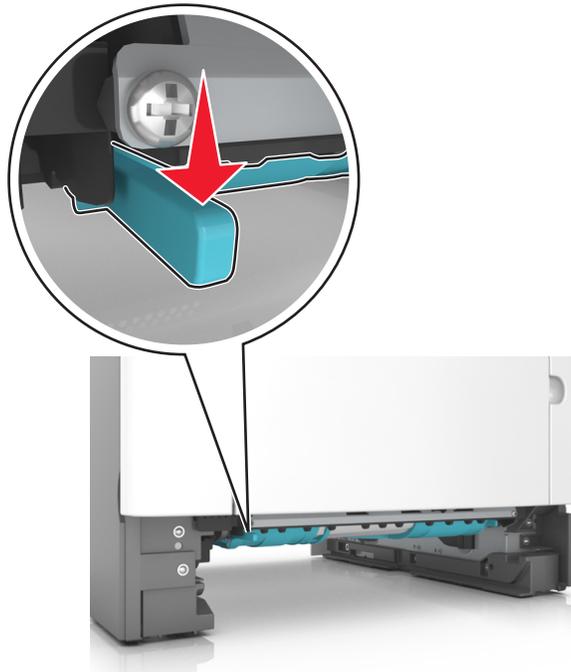
## [x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [23y.xx]

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

- 1 Pull the tray completely out of the printer.

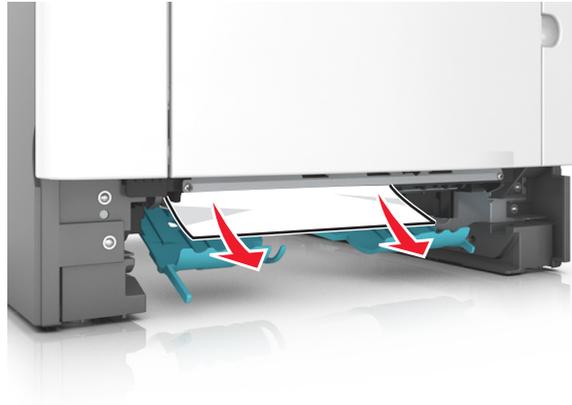


- 2 Locate the blue lever, and then pull it down to release the jam.



- 3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



4 Insert the tray.

5 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** >  > **Clear the jam**, press **OK** > .

## [x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24y.xx]

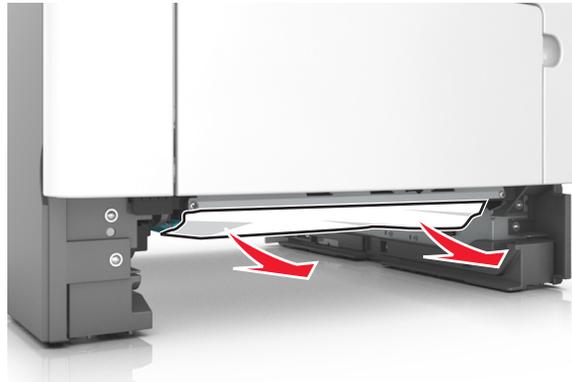
1 Pull the tray completely out of the printer.

**Note:** The message on the printer display indicates the tray where the jammed paper is located.



2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



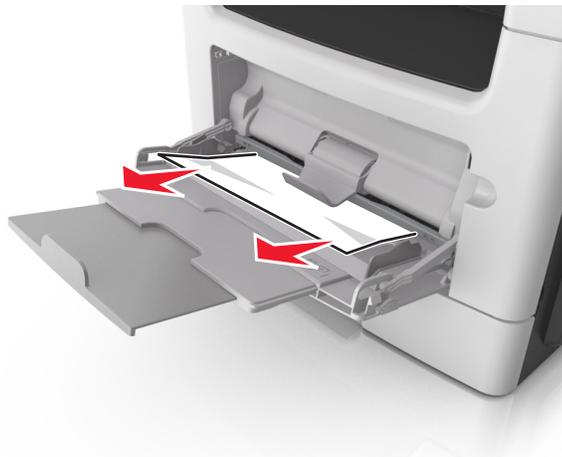
3 Insert the tray.

4 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** >  > **Clear the jam**, press **OK** > .

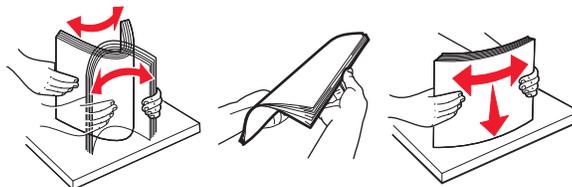
## [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder. [25y.xx]

1 From the multipurpose feeder, firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



2 Flex the sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- 3 Reload paper into the multipurpose feeder.



**Note:** Make sure the paper guide lightly rests against the edge of the paper.

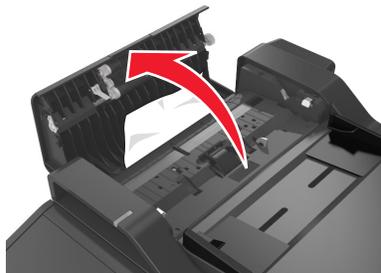
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** >  > **Clear the jam, press OK** > .

## [x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx]

- 1 Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.

**Note:** The message is cleared when the pages are removed from the ADF tray.

- 2 Open the ADF cover.



- 3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 4 Close the ADF cover.

- 5 Straighten the edges of the original documents, then load the original documents into the ADF, and then adjust the paper guide.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** >  > **Clear the jam, press OK** > .

# Troubleshooting

## Understanding printer messages

### Cartridge, imaging unit mismatch [41.xy]

- 1 Check if the toner cartridge and imaging unit are both *MICR* (Magnetic Imaging Content Recording) or non-MICR supplies.

**Note:** For a list of supported supplies, see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

- 2 Change the toner cartridge or imaging unit so that both are MICR or non-MICR supplies.

#### Notes:

- Use MICR toner cartridge and imaging unit for printing checks and other similar documents.
- Use non-MICR toner cartridge and imaging unit for regular print jobs.

### Cartridge low [88.xy]

You may need to order a toner cartridge. If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Cartridge nearly low [88.xy]

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy]

You may need to replace the toner cartridge very soon. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, then verify that the paper size and type settings are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then select **Finished changing paper**. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the print job.

## Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following

- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then select **Finished changing paper**. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the print job.

## Change [paper source] to [paper size] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then select **Finished changing paper**. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the print job.

## Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then select **Finished changing paper**. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the print job.

## Close flatbed cover and load originals if restarting job [2yy.xx]

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Scan from automatic feeder** to continue scanning from the ADF immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Scan from flatbed** to continue scanning from the scanner glass immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Finish job without further scanning** to end the last successful scan job.  
**Note:** This does not cancel the scan job. All successfully scanned pages will be processed further for copying, faxing, or e-mailing.
- Select **Cancel job** to clear the message and cancel the scan job.
- For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Close front door

Close the front door of the printer.

## Complex page, some data may not have printed [39]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the current print job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Install additional printer memory.

## Defective flash detected [51]

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the defective flash memory card.
- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the current print job.

## Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.

An unsupported USB device is inserted. Remove the USB device, and then insert a supported one.

## Error reading USB hub. Remove hub.

An unsupported USB hub has been inserted. Remove the USB hub, and then install a supported one.

## Fax memory full

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator.

Try either of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn the printer off, and then turn it back on. If the message appears again, then contact your system support person or see the “Setting up the printer to fax” section of the *User’s Guide*.

## Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator.

Try either of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Complete the Fax Server setup. If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

## Fax Station Name not set up. Contact system administrator.

Try either of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Complete the Analog Fax Setup. If the message appears again after completing the setup, then contact your system support person.

## Fax Station Number not set up. Contact system administrator.

Try either of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Complete the Analog Fax Setup. If the message appears again after completing the setup, then contact your system support person.

## Imaging unit low [84.xy]

You may need to order an imaging unit. If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Imaging unit nearly low [84.xy]

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Imaging unit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy]

You may need to replace the imaging unit very soon. For more information, see the "Replacing supplies" section of the *User's Guide*.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size of paper in the tray.
- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different tray. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Check the tray length and width guides and make sure the paper is loaded properly in the tray.
- Make sure the correct paper size and type are specified in the Printing Preferences or in the Print dialog.

- Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.
- Make sure that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, then make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

### Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to stop the defragmentation and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data from the printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.

### Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37]

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.

Select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete other held jobs to free up additional printer memory.

### Insufficient memory to collate job [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to print the part of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the current print job.

### Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35]

Install additional printer memory or select **Continue** on the printer control panel to disable Resource Save, clear the message, and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Load manual feeder with [custom string] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.  
**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer automatically overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.
- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [custom type name] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the multipurpose feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.  
**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer manually overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.
- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the multipurpose feeder with the correct size of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.  
**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer manually overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.
- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the multipurpose feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.  
**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer manually overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.
- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [custom string] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray that has the correct size or type of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel.

For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [custom type name] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray that has the correct size or type of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel.

For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size of paper.
- To use the tray or feeder that has the correct size of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray or feeder that has the correct size and type of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Maintenance kit low [80.xy]

You may need to order a maintenance kit. For more information, contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative. If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy]

For more information, contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative. If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy]

You may need to replace the maintenance kit very soon. For more information, contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Memory full, cannot print faxes

From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message without printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** Held faxes will attempt to print after the printer restarts.

## Memory full, cannot send faxes

- 1 From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and cancel the fax job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- 2 Do either of the following:
  - Reduce the fax resolution, and then resend the fax job.
  - Reduce the number of pages in the fax, and then resend fax job.

## Memory full [38]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Cancel job** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Install additional printer memory.

## Network [x] software error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, contact customer support.

## No analog phone line connected to modem, fax is disabled.

Connect the printer to an analog phone line.

## Non-Lexmark [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy]

**Note:** The supply type can be toner cartridge or imaging unit.

The printer has detected a non-Lexmark supply or part installed in the printer.

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.

All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or associated components.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty.

To accept any and all of these risks and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, press and hold  and the # button on the printer control panel simultaneously for 15 seconds.

For non-touch-screen printer models, press  and  on the printer control panel simultaneously for 15 seconds to clear the message and continue printing.

If you do not wish to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer, and then install a genuine Lexmark supply or part.

**Note:** For a list of supported supplies, see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User's Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

**Note:** Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.

## Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete.

From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

For more information, visit <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support.

## Reinstall missing or unresponsive cartridge [31.xy]

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the toner cartridge is missing. If missing, install the toner cartridge.  
For information on installing the cartridge, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.
- If the toner cartridge is installed, then remove the unresponsive toner cartridge, and then reinstall it.  
**Note:** If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the cartridge is defective. Replace the toner cartridge.

## Reinstall missing or unresponsive imaging unit [31.xy]

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the imaging unit is missing. If missing, install the imaging unit.  
For information on installing the imaging unit, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.
- If the imaging unit is installed, then remove the unresponsive imaging unit, and then reinstall it.  
**Note:** If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the imaging unit is defective. Replace the imaging unit.

## Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the paper stack from the standard bin. The printer automatically detects paper removal and resumes printing. If removing the paper does not clear the message, then select **Continue** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Replace all originals if restarting job.

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Cancel job** to clear the message and cancel the scan job.
- Select **Scan from automatic feeder** to continue scanning from the ADF immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Scan from flatbed** to continue scanning from the scanner immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Finish job without further scanning** to end the last successful scan job.
- Select **Restart job** to restart the scan job with the same settings from the previous scan job.
- For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Replace cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy]

Replace the toner cartridge to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy]

Install a toner cartridge that matches the region number of the printer. x indicates the value of the printer region. y indicates the value of the cartridge region. x and y can have the following values:

### List of printer and toner cartridge regions

Region number	Region
0	Global
1	United States, Canada
2	European Economic Area (EEA), Switzerland
3	Asia Pacific, Australia, New Zealand
4	Latin America
5	Africa, Middle East, rest of Europe
9	Invalid

### Notes:

- The x and y values are the .xy of the error code shown on the printer control panel.
- The x and y values must match for printing to continue.

## Replace defective imaging unit [31.xy]

Replace the defective imaging unit to clear the message. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement imaging unit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Replace imaging unit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy]

Replace the imaging unit to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement imaging unit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Replace jammed originals if restarting job.

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Cancel job** to clear the message and cancel the scan job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Select **Scan from automatic feeder** to continue scanning from the ADF immediately after the last successful scan job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Select **Scan from flatbed** to continue scanning from the scanner immediately after the last successful scan job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Select **Finish job without further scanning** to end the last successful scan job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Select **Restart job** to restart the scan job with the same settings from the previous scan job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy]

Contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative, and then report the message. The printer is scheduled for maintenance.

## Replace unsupported cartridge [32.xy]

Remove the toner cartridge, and then install a supported one to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Replace unsupported imaging unit [32.xy]

Remove the imaging unit, and then install a supported one to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement imaging unit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Scanner automatic feeder cover open

Close the ADF cover.

## Scanner disabled by admin [840.01]

Print without the scanner, or contact your system support person.

## Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. [840.02]

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Continue with scanner disabled** to return to the home screen, and then contact your system support person.
- Select **Reboot and automatically enable scanner** to cancel the job.

**Note:** This attempts to enable the scanner.

- For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner [2yy.xx]

Remove the jammed paper from the scanner.

## Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner [2yy.xx]

Remove the jammed paper from the scanner.

## Serial option [x] error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the serial cable is properly connected and is the correct one for the serial port.
- Make sure that the serial interface parameters (protocol, baud, parity, and data bits) are set correctly on the printer and computer.
- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on.

## SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator.

From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

## Standard network software error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer and then turn it back on.
- Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, contact customer support.

## Standard USB port disabled [56]

From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Notes:

- The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

## Supply needed to complete job

Do either of the following:

- Install the missing supply to complete the job.
- Cancel the current job.

## Too many flash options installed [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra flash memory.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## Too many trays attached [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra trays.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## Unformatted flash detected [53]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control, select **Continue** to stop the defragmentation and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Format the flash memory.

**Note:** If the error message remains, then the flash memory may be defective and need to be replaced.

## Weblink server not set up. Contact system administrator.

Select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

## Solving printer problems

- “Basic printer problems” on page 195
- “Hardware and internal option problems” on page 197
- “Paper feed problems” on page 199

### Basic printer problems

#### The printer is not responding

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Make sure the printer is turned on.</p> <p>Is the printer turned on?</p>	Go to step 2.	Turn on the printer.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the printer is in Sleep mode or Hibernate mode.</p> <p>Is the printer in Sleep mode or Hibernate mode?</p>	Press the Sleep button to wake the printer from Sleep mode or Hibernate mode.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Check if one end of the power cord is plugged into the printer and the other to a properly grounded electrical outlet.</p> <p>Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?</p>	Go to step 4.	Plug one end of the power cord into the printer and the other to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check other electrical equipment plugged into the electrical outlet.</p> <p>Does other electrical equipment work?</p>	Unplug the other electrical equipment, and then turn on the printer. If the printer does not work, then reconnect the other electrical equipment.	Go to step 5.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 5</b> Check if the cables connecting the printer and the computer are inserted in the correct ports.</p> <p>Are the cables inserted in the correct ports?</p>	Go to step 6.	<p>Make sure to match the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer</li> <li>• The appropriate Ethernet cable with the Ethernet port</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 6</b> Make sure the electrical outlet is not turned off by a switch or breaker.</p> <p>Is the electrical outlet turned off by a switch or breaker?</p>	Turn on the switch or reset the breaker.	Go to step 7.
<p><b>Step 7</b> Check if the printer is plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords.</p> <p>Is the printer plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords?</p>	Connect the printer power cord directly to a properly grounded electrical outlet.	Go to step 8.
<p><b>Step 8</b> Check if one end of the printer cable is plugged into a port on the printer and the other to the computer, print server, option, or other network device.</p> <p>Is the printer cable securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device?</p>	Go to step 9.	Connect the printer cable securely to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device.
<p><b>Step 9</b> Make sure to install all hardware options properly and remove any packing material.</p> <p>Are all hardware options properly installed and all packing material removed?</p>	Go to step 10.	Turn off the printer, remove all packing materials, then reinstall the hardware options, and then turn on the printer.
<p><b>Step 10</b> Check if you have selected the correct port settings in the printer driver.</p> <p>Are the port settings correct?</p>	Go to step 11.	Use correct printer driver settings.
<p><b>Step 11</b> Check the installed printer driver.</p> <p>Is the correct printer driver installed?</p>	Go to step 12.	Install the correct printer driver.
<p><b>Step 12</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p>Is the printer working?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Printer display is blank

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Press the Sleep button on the printer control panel.</p> <p>Does <b>Ready</b> appear on the printer display?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p>Do <b>Please wait</b> and <b>Ready</b> appear on the printer display?</p>	The problem is solved.	Turn off the printer, and then contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Hardware and internal option problems

#### Cannot detect internal option

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.</p> <p>Does the internal option operate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the internal option is properly installed in the controller board.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Turn off the printer using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.</li> <li><b>b</b> Make sure the internal option is installed in the appropriate connector in the controller board.</li> <li><b>c</b> Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.</li> </ul> <p>Is the internal option properly installed in the controller board?</p>	Go to step 3.	Connect the internal option to the controller board.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Print a menu settings page, and then check to see if the internal option is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the internal option listed in the menu settings page?</p>	Go to step 4.	Reinstall the internal option.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the internal option is selected. It may be necessary to manually add the internal option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 23.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the internal option operate correctly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Tray problems

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check for paper jams or misfeeds.</li> <li>• Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> <li>• If you are printing on custom-size paper, then make sure that the paper guides rest against the edges of the paper.</li> <li>• Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.</li> <li>• Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Check if the tray closes properly.</p> <p>Is the tray working?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Turn off the printer, then wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the tray working?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Check if the tray is installed and recognized by the printer. Print a menu settings page, and then check if the tray is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the tray listed in the menu settings page?</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>	<p>Reinstall the tray. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the tray.</p>
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the tray is available in the printer driver.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If necessary, manually add the tray in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 23.</p> <p>Is the tray available in the printer driver?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

## Paper feed problems

### Jammed pages are not reprinted

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>a</b> Turn on jam recovery.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Settings &gt; General Settings &gt; Print Recovery &gt; Jam Recovery</b></li> <li>Select <b>On</b> or <b>Auto</b>.</li> <li>Depending on your printer model, press  or touch <b>Submit</b>.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the pages that did not print.</p> <p>Were the jammed pages reprinted?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Paper frequently jams

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.</li> <li>Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> <li>Check if the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.</li> <li>Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.</li> <li>Check if you are printing on a recommended paper size and type.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Insert the tray properly.</p> <p>If jam recovery is enabled, then the print jobs will reprint automatically.</p> <p>Do paper jams still occur frequently?</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do paper jams still occur frequently?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Review the tips on avoiding jams. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 168.</p> <p><b>b</b> Follow the recommendations, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do paper jams still occur frequently?</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>

### Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>a</b> Do either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For touch-screen printer models, touch  or <b>Done</b>.</li> <li>For non-touch-screen printer models, select <b>Next</b> &gt;  &gt; <b>Clear the jam</b>, press <b>OK</b> &gt; .</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Follow the instructions on the printer display.</p> <p>Does the paper jam message remain?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

## Solving print problems

### Printing problems

#### Incorrect characters print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. <b>Note:</b> If <b>Ready Hex</b> appears on the printer display, then turn off the printer, and then turn it back on to deactivate Hex Trace mode.</p> <p>Is the printer in Hex Trace mode?</p>	Deactivate Hex Trace mode.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, select <b>Standard Network</b> or <b>Network [x]</b>, and then set SmartSwitch to On.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do incorrect characters print?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

#### Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if you are printing on paper that is supported by the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper size and type to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, open Printing Preferences or the Print dialog, and then specify the paper type.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the trays are not linked.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Large jobs do not collate

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Finishing menu on the printer control panel, set Collate to “(1,2,3) (1,2,3).”</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print and collate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer software, set Collate to “(1,2,3) (1,2,3).”</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Setting Collate to “(1,1,1) (2,2,2)” in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print and collate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.</p> <p>Did the job print and collate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Multiple-language PDF files do not print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the print options for the PDF output are set to embed all fonts. For more information, see the documentation that came with Adobe Acrobat.</p> <p><b>b</b> Generate a new PDF file, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the files print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>File &gt; Print &gt; Advanced &gt; Print As Image &gt; OK &gt; OK</b>.</p> <p>Do the files print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Print jobs do not print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the document you are trying to print, open the Print dialog and check if you have selected the correct printer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the printer is not the default printer, then you must select the printer for each document that you want to print.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the printer is plugged in and turned on, and if <b>Ready</b> appears on the printer display.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>If an error message appears on the printer display, then clear the message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The printer continues to print after clearing the message.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the ports (USB, serial, or Ethernet) are working and if the cables are securely connected to the computer and the printer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.
<p><b>Step 6</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Remove, and then reinstall the printer software. For more information, see “Installing the printer software” on page 23.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The printer software is available at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a>.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

**Print job takes longer than expected**

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Change the environmental settings of the printer.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, navigate to:</p> <p><b>Settings &gt; General Settings</b></p> <p><b>b</b> Select <b>Eco-Mode</b> or <b>Quiet Mode</b>, and then select <b>Off</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Disabling Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode may increase the consumption of energy or supplies, or both.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Reduce the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job, and then resend the job</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Remove held jobs stored in the printer memory.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Disable the Page Protect feature.</p> <p>From the printer control panel, navigate to:  <b>Settings &gt; General Settings &gt; Print Recovery &gt; Page Protect &gt; Off</b></p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the cable connections to the printer and print server are secure. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Printing slows down

### Notes:

- When printing using narrow paper, the printer prints at a reduced speed to prevent damage to the fuser.
- The printer speed may be reduced when printing for long periods of time, or printing at elevated temperatures.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Make sure the size of the paper loaded in the tray matches the fuser type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Use a 110-volt fuser for printing on letter-size paper and a 220-volt fuser for printing on A4-size paper.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the print speed increase?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fuser. For more information on installing the fuser, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the print speed increase?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Tray linking does not work

**Notes:**

- The trays can detect paper length.
- The multipurpose feeder does not automatically detect the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

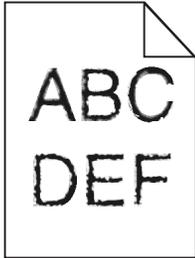
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Open the trays, and then check if they contain paper of the same size and type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the paper guides are in the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded in each tray.</li> <li>• Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the trays link correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the trays to be linked.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The paper size and type must match for trays to be linked.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the trays link correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Unexpected page breaks occur

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Adjust the print timeout settings.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Settings &gt; General Settings &gt; Timeouts &gt; Print Timeout</b></p> <p><b>b</b> Select a higher setting and then, depending on your printer model, select  or <b>Submit</b>.</p> <p><b>c</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the file print correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check the original file for manual page breaks.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the file print correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

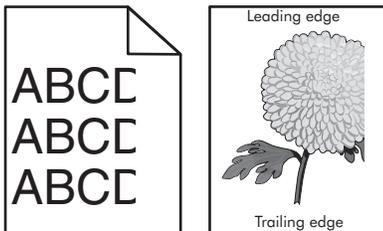
## Print quality problems

### Characters have jagged or uneven edges



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Print a font sample list to check if the fonts you are using are supported by the printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Menus &gt; Reports &gt; Print Fonts</b></li> <li>Select <b>PCL Fonts</b> or <b>PostScript Fonts</b>.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Are you using fonts that are supported by the printer?</p>	Go to step 2.	Select a font that is supported by the printer.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check if the fonts installed on the computer are supported by the printer.</p> <p>Are the fonts installed on the computer supported by the printer?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Clipped pages or images



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper loaded.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the page or image clipped?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper size and type match the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specify the paper size from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>• Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the page or image clipped?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Remove the toner cartridge.</li> <li>2 Remove the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the page or image clipped?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

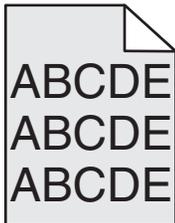
### Compressed images appear on prints

**Note:** Printing on letter-size paper using a 220-volt fuser compresses images.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Make sure the size of the paper loaded in the tray matches the fuser type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Use a 110-volt fuser for printing on letter-size paper and a 220-volt fuser for printing on A4-size paper.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do compressed images still appear?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

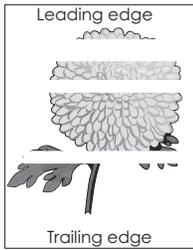
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fuser. For more information on installing the fuser, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do compressed images still appear?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Gray background on prints



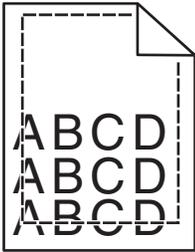
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Quality Menu on the printer control panel, decrease the toner darkness.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the gray background disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Reinstall the imaging unit and the toner cartridge.</p> <p><b>a</b> Remove the toner cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Remove the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light can cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>c</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>d</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the gray background disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the gray background disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Horizontal voids appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Make sure your software program is using a correct fill pattern.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Load the specified tray or feeder with a recommended type of paper.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li><b>2</b> Firmly shake the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>3</b> Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> </li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Incorrect margins on prints

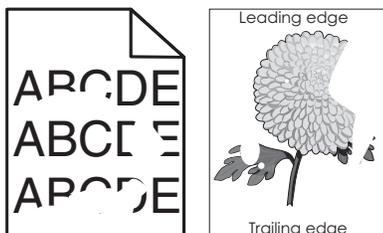


Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Are the margins correct?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper size in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Does the paper size match the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specify the paper size from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>• Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Are the margins correct?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Paper curl

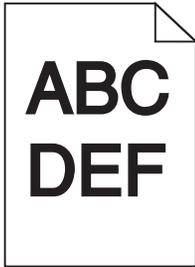
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded.</p> <p>Are the width and length guides positioned correctly?</p>	Go to step 2.	Adjust the width and length guides.
<p><b>Step 2</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper type and weight match the type and weight of the paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	Specify the paper type and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the paper still curled?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Remove the paper from the tray, and then turn it over.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the paper still curled?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Load paper from a fresh package.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the paper still curled?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Print irregularities



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the printer settings match the type and weight of the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	Specify the paper size and type from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the paper loaded in the tray has texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	From the printer control panel, set the paper texture in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Go to step 6.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 6</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.	The problem is solved.

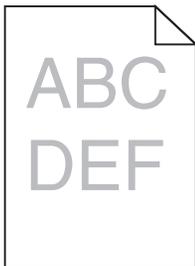
**Print is too dark**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, reduce the toner darkness.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type, texture and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the tray set to the type, texture, and weight of the paper loaded?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specify the paper type, texture, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>• Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper type, texture and weight specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the paper loaded in the tray has texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	From the printer control panel, change the texture settings in the Paper Texture menu to match the paper you are printing on.	Go to step 5.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Go to step 6.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 6</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

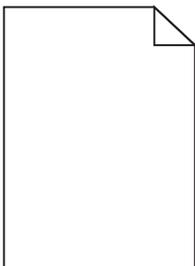
**Print is too light**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, increase the toner darkness.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Is the tray set to the type, texture, and weight of the paper loaded?</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper type, texture, and weight to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture, and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b>                      Make sure that the paper has no texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	<p>From the printer control panel, change the texture settings in the Paper Texture menu to match the paper you are printing on.</p>	<p>Go to step 5.</p>
<p><b>Step 5</b>  <b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.  <b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.  <b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	<p>Go to step 6.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 6</b>  <b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.                      1 Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.                      2 Firmly shake the imaging unit.  <b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.                      3 Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.  <b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	<p>Go to step 7.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 7</b>                      Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>

**Printer is printing blank pages**



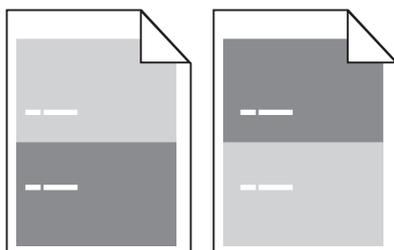
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if there is packing material left on the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li>2 Check if the packing material is properly removed from the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer still printing blank pages?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li>2 Firmly shake the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer still printing blank pages?</p>	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer still printing blank pages?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

**Printer is printing solid black pages**



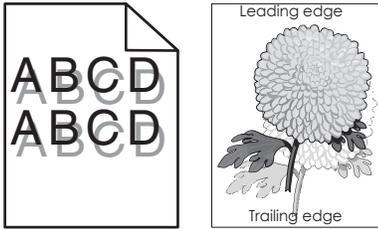
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>a Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p>1 Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p>2 Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p>b Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer printing solid black pages?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer printing solid black pages?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

**Repeating defects appear on prints**



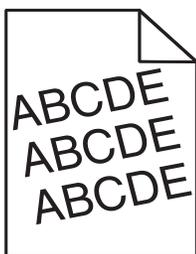
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Measure the distance between the defects.</p> <p>Check for a distance between the defects that equals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 97 mm (3.82 in.)</li> <li>• 47 mm (1.85 in.)</li> <li>• 38 mm (1.5 in.)</li> </ul> <p>Is the distance between defects equal to one of the listed measurements?</p>	Go to step 2.	<p>1 Check if the distance between the defects equal to 80 mm (3.15 in.)</p> <p>2 Take note of the distance, and then contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the repeating defects still appear?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.	The problem is solved.

### Shadow images appear on prints



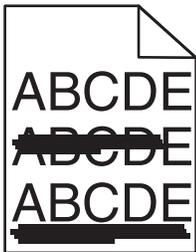
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Load paper with the correct paper type and weight in the tray.</p> <p>Is paper with the correct paper type and weight loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 2.	Load paper with the correct paper type and weight in the tray.
<p><b>Step 2</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Is the tray set to the type and weight of the paper loaded?</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper type and weight specified in the tray settings.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do shadow images still appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do shadow images still appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Skewed print



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the print still skewed?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Check if you are printing on a paper that is supported by the tray.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the print still skewed?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

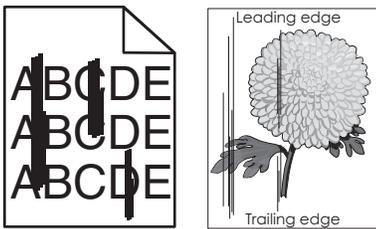
### Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the tray or feeder from Printing Preferences or the Print dialog.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper type and weight match the type and weight of the paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper type and weight to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package. <b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>2</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

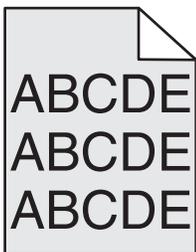
### Streaked vertical lines appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture, and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper texture, type, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper texture, type, and weight match the paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify the paper texture, type, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper texture, type, and weight specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>

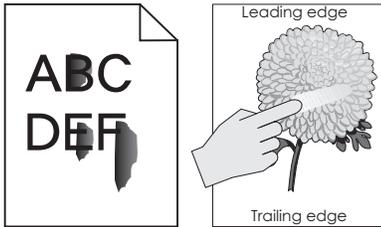
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>2</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.	The problem is solved.

**Toner fog or background shading appears on prints**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>a</b> Remove, and then install the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does fog or shading appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Does fog or shading appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.	The problem is solved.

### Toner rubs off



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, check the paper type and weight.</p> <p>Do the paper type and texture match the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 2.	Specify the paper type and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if you are printing on paper with texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper texture.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

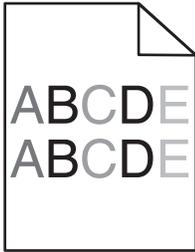
### Toner specks appear on prints

Action	Yes	No
<p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do toner specks appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Transparency print quality is poor

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Is the paper type for the tray set to Transparency?</p>	Go to step 2.	Set the paper type to Transparency.
<p><b>Step 2</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Check if you are using a recommended type of transparency.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> </p> <p>Is the print quality still poor?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Uneven print density



Action	Yes	No
Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.  Is the print density uneven?	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Vertical voids appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<b>Step 1</b> a Make sure your software program is using a correct fill pattern. b Resend the print job.  Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<b>Step 2</b> a From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. b Resend the print job.  Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
<b>Step 3</b> Check if you are using a recommended type of paper. a Load the specified tray or feeder with a recommended type of paper. b Resend the print job.  Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li><b>2</b> Firmly shake the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>3</b> Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

## Solving copy problems

- “Copier does not respond” on page 224
- “Scanner unit does not close” on page 225
- “Poor copy quality” on page 225
- “Partial document or photo copies” on page 226

## Copier does not respond

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Check if an error or status message appears on the display.</p> <p>Does an error or status message appear?</p>	Clear the error or status message.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check if the power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.</p> <p>Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?</p>	Go to step 3.	Connect the power cord to the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn it back on.</p> <p>Did <b>Performing Self Test</b> and <b>Ready</b> appear?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Scanner unit does not close

Action	Yes	No
<p>Check if there are no obstructions between the scanner unit and the printer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Lift the scanner unit.</li> <li><b>b</b> Remove any obstruction that keeps the scanner unit open.</li> <li><b>c</b> Lower the scanner unit.</li> </ul> <p>Did the scanner unit close properly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Poor copy quality

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check if an error or status message appears on the display.</p> <p>Does an error or status message appear?</p>	<p>Clear the error or status message.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check the quality of the original document.</p> <p>Is the quality of the original document satisfactory?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>Increase the scan resolution setting for a higher-quality output.</p>
<p><b>Step 3</b> If dark marks appear on prints, then clean the scanner glass and the ADF glass using a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water.</p> <p>Is the scanner glass clean?</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>	<p>See “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 155.</p>
<p><b>Step 4</b> Send a print job, and then check for print quality problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> From the General Settings menu, adjust the Eco-Mode settings.</li> <li><b>b</b> From the Copy menu, adjust the Darkness setting.</li> <li><b>c</b> If the print remains faded, then replace the toner cartridge.</li> </ul> <p>Is the print quality satisfactory?</p>	<p>Go to step 5.</p>	<p>See “Print quality problems” on page 206.</p>
<p><b>Step 5</b> Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p> <p>Is the document or photo loaded correctly?</p>	<p>Go to step 6.</p>	<p>Place the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p>

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 6</b> Check the copy settings. From the Copy screen, check if the Content Type and Content Source settings are correct for the document being scanned.</p> <p>Are the Content Type and Content Source settings correct for the document being scanned?</p>	Go to step 7.	Change the Content Type and Content Source settings to match the document being scanned.
<p><b>Step 7</b> Check for patterns on print.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Copy &gt; Sharpness</b> &gt; select a lower setting <b>Note:</b> Make sure no scaling is being selected.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the copy job.</p> <p>Do patterns appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 8.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 8</b> Check for missing or faded text on prints.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the Copy screen, adjust the settings of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Sharpness</b>—Increase the sharpness setting.</li> <li>• <b>Contrast</b>—Increase the contrast setting.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the copy job.</p> <p>Do prints have missing or faded text?</p>	Go to step 9.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 9</b> Check for washed-out or overexposed output.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the Copy screen, adjust the settings of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Background Removal</b>—Reduce the current setting.</li> <li>• <b>Darkness</b>—Increase the current setting.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the copy job.</p> <p>Do pages show washed-out or overexposed prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Partial document or photo copies

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p> <p>Is the document or photo loaded correctly?</p>	Go to step 2.	Place the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check if the paper size setting matches the size of the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting.</p> <p>Does the paper size setting match the size of the paper loaded in the tray.</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper size setting to match the paper loaded in the tray, or load the tray with paper that matches the paper size setting.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Specify the paper size. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size in Printing Preferences or the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do copies print properly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Solving fax problems

- “Fax function is not set up” on page 227
- “Caller ID is not shown” on page 228
- “Cannot send or receive a fax” on page 229
- “Can send but not receive faxes” on page 231
- “Can receive but not send faxes” on page 232
- “Received fax has poor print quality” on page 233

### Fax function is not set up

Before completing these instructions for network printers, check if the fax cables are connected.

**Note:** The indicator light blinks red until you set up fax.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, navigate to:</p> <p> &gt; <b>Settings</b> &gt;  &gt; <b>General Settings</b> &gt;  &gt; <b>Run initial setup</b> &gt;  &gt; </p> <p><b>b</b> Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on. The “Select your language” screen appears on the printer display.</p> <p><b>c</b> Select a language, and then press .</p> <p><b>d</b> Select a country or region, and then press .</p> <p><b>e</b> Select a time zone, and then press .</p> <p><b>f</b> Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to <b>Fax</b>, and then press .</p> <p>Is the fax function set up?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Caller ID is not shown

Action	Yes	No
<p>Contact your telephone company to check if your telephone line is subscribed to the caller ID service.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your region supports multiple caller ID patterns, then you may have to change the default setting. There are two settings available: FSK (pattern 1) and DTMF (pattern 2).</li> <li>• The availability of these settings in the Fax menu depends on whether your country or region supports multiple caller ID patterns.</li> <li>• Contact your telephone company to determine which pattern or switch setting to use.</li> </ul> <p>Does the caller ID appear?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

## Cannot send or receive a fax

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check if an error or status message appears on the display.</p> <p>Is there an error or status message on the display?</p>	Clear the error or status message.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.</p> <p>Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?</p>	Go to step 3.	Connect the power cord to the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Check the power. Check if the printer is plugged in and turned on, and if <b>Ready</b> appears on the display.</p> <p>Is the printer turned on, and does <b>Ready</b> appear on the display?</p>	Go to step 4.	Turn on the printer, and then wait until <b>Ready</b> appears on the display.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check the printer connections. If applicable, check if the cable connections for the following equipment are secure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Telephone</li> <li>• Handset</li> <li>• Answering machine</li> </ul> <p>Are the cable connections secure?</p>	Go to step 5.	Securely connect the cables.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check the telephone wall jack.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Plug the telephone cable into the wall jack.</li> <li><b>2</b> Listen for a dial tone.</li> <li><b>3</b> If you do not hear a dial tone, then plug a different telephone cable into the wall jack.</li> <li><b>4</b> If you still do not hear a dial tone, then plug the telephone cable into a different wall jack.</li> <li><b>5</b> If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Try sending or receiving a fax.</p> <p>Can you send or receive a fax?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 6</b>                      Check if the printer is connected to an analog phone service or the correct digital connector.</p> <p>The fax modem is an analog device. Certain devices can be connected to the printer so that digital telephone services can be used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using an ISDN telephone service, then connect the printer to an analog telephone port (an R-interface port) on an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information and to request an R-interface port, contact your ISDN provider.</li> <li>• If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that will support analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.</li> <li>• If you are using a PBX telephone service, then make sure you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, then consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.</li> </ul> <p>Is the printer connected to an analog phone service or the correct digital connector?</p>	<p>Go to step 7.</p>	<p>Connect the printer to an analog phone service or the correct digital connector.</p>
<p><b>Step 7</b>                      Check for a dial tone.</p> <p>Did you hear a dial tone?</p>	<p>Go to step 8.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try calling the fax number to make sure that it is working properly.</li> <li>• If the telephone line is being used by another device, then wait until the other device is finished before sending a fax.</li> <li>• If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to check if you hear a dial tone.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 8</b>                      Temporarily disconnect other equipment (such as answering machines, computers with modems, or telephone line splitters) between the printer and the telephone line, and then try sending or receiving a fax.</p> <p>Can you send or receive a fax?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 9.</p>
<p><b>Step 9</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Temporarily disable call waiting. Contact your telephone company to obtain the keypad sequence for temporarily disabling call waiting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Try sending or receiving a fax.</p> <p>Can you send or receive a fax?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 10.</p>

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 10</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Temporarily disable voice mail service. For more information, contact your telephone company.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you want to use both voice mail and the printer, then consider adding a second telephone line for the printer.</p> <p><b>b</b> Try sending or receiving a fax.</p> <p>Can you send or receive a fax?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 11.
<p><b>Step 11</b></p> <p>Scan the original document one page at a time.</p> <p><b>a</b> Dial the fax number.</p> <p><b>b</b> Scan the document one page at a time.</p> <p>Can you send or receive a fax?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Can send but not receive faxes

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Check the tray or feeder.</p> <p>If empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder.</p> <p>Can you receive faxes?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check the ring count delay settings.</p> <p><b>a</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.</li> <li>If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>Settings &gt; Fax Settings &gt; Analog Fax Setup</b>.</p> <p><b>c</b> In the “Rings to Answer” field, enter the number of times you want the phone to ring before the printer answers.</p> <p><b>d</b> Click <b>Submit</b>.</p> <p>Can you receive faxes?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 3</b>                      Replace the toner cartridge. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.</p> <p>Can you receive faxes?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Can receive but not send faxes

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b>                      Check if the printer is in Fax mode.                      From the printer control panel, press <b>Fax</b> to put the printer in fax mode, and then resend the fax job.</p> <p>Can you send faxes?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b>  <b>a</b> Load the original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.</li> <li>The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the fax job.</p> <p>Can you send faxes?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b>  <b>a</b> Check if the shortcut number is configured for the number that you want to dial.  <b>Note:</b> As an alternative, you can dial the telephone number manually.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the fax job.</p> <p>Can you send faxes?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Received fax has poor print quality

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Ask the person who sent you the fax to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Check if the quality of the original document is satisfactory.</li> <li><b>b</b> Increase the fax scan resolution, if possible.</li> <li><b>c</b> Resend the fax. There may have been a problem with the quality of the telephone line connection.</li> </ul> <p>Is the fax print quality satisfactory?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Decrease the incoming fax transmission speed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.</li> <li>• If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>b</b> Click <b>Settings &gt; Fax Settings &gt; Analog Fax Setup</b>.</li> <li><b>c</b> In the Max Speed menu, click one of the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2400</li> <li>• 4800</li> <li>• 9600</li> <li>• 14400</li> <li>• 33600</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>d</b> Click <b>Submit</b>.</li> <li><b>e</b> Resend the fax.</li> </ul> <p>Is the fax print quality satisfactory?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Replace the toner cartridge.</p> <p>When <b>Cartridge low [88.xy]</b> appears, replace the cartridge, and then resend the fax.</p> <p>Is the fax print quality satisfactory?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Solving scanner problems

- “The scanner does not respond” on page 234
- “Scan job was not successful” on page 235
- “Scanner unit does not close” on page 235

- “Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer” on page 235
- “Poor scanned image quality” on page 236
- “Partial document or photo scans” on page 237

## The scanner does not respond

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check if the printer is turned on.</p> <p>Is the printer turned on?</p>	Go to step 2.	Turn on the printer.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device.</p> <p>Is the printer cable securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device?</p>	Go to step 3.	Connect the printer cable securely to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Check if the power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.</p> <p>Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?</p>	Go to step 4.	Connect the power cord to the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check if the electrical outlet is turned off by a switch or breaker.</p> <p>Is the electrical outlet turned off by a switch or breaker?</p>	Turn on the switch or reset the breaker.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b> Check if the printer is plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords.</p> <p>Is the printer plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords?</p>	Connect the printer power cord directly to a properly grounded electrical outlet.	Go to step 6.
<p><b>Step 6</b> Check other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet.</p> <p>Are the other electrical equipment working?</p>	Unplug the other electrical equipment and turn on the printer. If the printer does not work, then reconnect the other electrical equipment and then go to step 6.	Go to step 7.
<p><b>Step 7</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p>Are the printer and scanner working?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Scan job was not successful

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check the cable connections. Make sure the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.</p> <p>Are the cables securely connected?</p>	Go to step 2.	Connect the cables properly.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the file name is already in use.</p> <p>Is the file name already in use?</p>	Change the file name.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Check if the document or photo you want to scan is open in another application or being used by another user.</p> <p>Is the file you want to scan open by another application or user?</p>	Close the file you are scanning.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check if either the <b>Append time stamp</b> or the <b>Overwrite existing file</b> check box is selected in the destination configuration settings.</p> <p>Is the <b>Append time stamp</b> or <b>Overwrite existing file</b> check box selected in the destination configuration settings?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	Select the <b>Append time stamp</b> or <b>Overwrite existing file</b> check box in the destination configuration settings.

## Scanner unit does not close

Action	Yes	No
<p>Check if there are obstructions in the scanner unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Lift the scanner unit.</li> <li><b>b</b> Remove any obstruction keeping the scanner unit open.</li> <li><b>c</b> Lower the scanner unit.</li> </ul> <p>Did the scanner unit close correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check if other applications are interfering with the scan. Close all applications that are not being used.</p> <p>Does scanning still take too long or freeze the computer?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b> Select a lower scan resolution.</p> <p>Does scanning still take too long or freeze the computer?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Poor scanned image quality

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Check if an error message appears on the display.</p> <p>Is there an error message on the printer display?</p>	Clear the error message.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check the quality of the original document.</p> <p>Is the quality of the original document satisfactory?</p>	Go to step 3.	Increase the scan resolution settings for a higher-quality output.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Clean the scanner glass and the ADF glass using a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water.</p> <p>Is the scanner glass clean?</p>	Go to step 4.	See “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 155.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p> <p>Is the document or photo loaded correctly?</p>	Go to step 5.	Place the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
<p><b>Step 5</b> Send a print job, and then check for print quality problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the General Settings menu, adjust the Eco-Mode settings.</li> <li>From the Copy menu, adjust the Darkness setting.</li> <li>When the print becomes faded, replace the toner cartridge.</li> </ul> <p>Is the print quality satisfactory?</p>	Go to step 6.	See “Print quality problems” on page 206.
<p><b>Step 6</b> Check the scan settings. From the Scan screen, make sure the Content Type and Content Source settings are correct for the document being scanned.</p> <p>Are the Content Type and Content Source settings correct for the document being scanned?</p>	Go to step 7.	Change the Content Type and Content Source settings to match the document being scanned.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 7</b></p> <p>Increase the scan resolution settings for a higher-quality output.</p> <p>Did the increased resolution produce a higher-quality output?</p>	<p>Problem solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

## Partial document or photo scans

Action	Yes	No
<p>Check the placement of the document or photo.</p> <p>Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p> <p>Is the document or photo loaded correctly?</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>	<p>Load the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.</p>

## Embedded Web Server does not open

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Turn on the printer.</p> <p><b>b</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address.</p> <p><b>c</b> Press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Make sure the printer IP address is correct.</p> <p><b>a</b> View the printer IP address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu</li> <li>By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.</p> <p><b>b</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Depending on the network settings, you may need to type "https://" instead of "http://" before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server.</p> <p><b>c</b> Press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Check if the network is working.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Print a network setup page.</li> <li><b>b</b> Check the first section of the network setup page and confirm that the status is Connected.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the status is Not Connected, then the connection may be intermittent, or the network cable may be defective. Contact your system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>c</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address.</li> <li><b>d</b> Press <b>Enter</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the cable connections to the printer and print server are secure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Connect the cables properly. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.</li> <li><b>b</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address.</li> <li><b>c</b> Press <b>Enter</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Temporarily disable the Web proxy servers.</p> <p>Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact your system support person.

## Contacting customer support

When you contact customer support, you will need to be able to describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the printer display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label at the back of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

Lexmark has various ways to help you solve your printing problem. Visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then select one of the following:

<b>Tech Library</b>	You can browse our library of manuals, support documentation, drivers, and other downloads to help you solve common problems.
<b>E-mail</b>	You can send an e-mail to the Lexmark team, describing your problem. A service representative will respond and provide you with information to solve your problem.

<b>Live chat</b>	You can chat directly with a service representative. They can work with you to solve your printer problem or provide assistance through Assisted Service where the service representative can remotely connect to your computer through the Internet to troubleshoot problems, install updates, or complete other tasks to help you successfully use your Lexmark product.
------------------	--

Telephone support is also available. In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

# Notices

## Product information

Product name:

Lexmark MX310dn

Machine type:

7015

Model(s):

270

## Edition notice

June 2012

**The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:**

LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

© 2012 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

## GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software Program and any related documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101, "Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Software Documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein.

## Licensing notices

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the root directory of the installation software CD.

## Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

Mac and the Mac logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Note:** To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:

Director of Lexmark Technology & Services  
Lexmark International, Inc.  
740 West New Circle Road  
Lexington, KY 40550  
(859) 232-3000

## Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	52 dBA
Scanning	45 dBA
Copying	54 dBA
Ready	N/A

Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

## Temperature information

Ambient operating temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)
Shipping and storage temperature	-40 to 60°C (-40 to 140°F)

## Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products.

If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for your local sales office phone number.

## Product disposal

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

## Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

## ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



## Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 7 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength of 655-675 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

## Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:

DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when cartridges are removed and interlock defeated. Avoid exposure to laser beam.

PERIGO - Radiação a laser invisível será liberada se os cartuchos forem removidos e o lacre rompido. Evite a exposição aos feixes de laser.

Opasnost - Nevidljivo lasersko zračenje kada su kasete uklonjene i poništena sigurnosna veza. Izbjegavati izlaganje zracima.

NEBEZPEČÍ - Když jsou vyjmuty kazety a je odblokována pojistka, ze zařízení je vysíláno neviditelné laserové záření. Nevystavujte se působení laserového paprsku.

FARE - Usynlig laserstråling, når patroner fjernes, og spærreanordningen er slået fra. Undgå at blive udsat for laserstrålen.

GEVAAR - Onzichtbare laserstraling wanneer cartridges worden verwijderd en een vergrendeling wordt genegeerd. Voorkom blootstelling aan de laser.

DANGER - Rayonnements laser invisibles lors du retrait des cartouches et du déverrouillage des loquets. Eviter toute exposition au rayon laser.

VAARA - Näkymätöntä lasersäteilyä on varottava, kun värikasetit on poistettu ja lukitus on auki. Vältä lasersäteelle altistumista.

GEFAHR - Unsichtbare Laserstrahlung beim Herausnehmen von Druckkassetten und offener Sicherheitssperre. Laserstrahl meiden.

ΚΙΝΔΥΝΟΣ - Εκκλυση αόρατης ακτινοβολίας laser κατά την αφαίρεση των κασετών και την απασφάλιση της μανδάλωσης. Αποφεύγετε την έκθεση στην ακτινοβολία laser.

VESZÉLY - Nem látható lézersugárzás fordulhat elő a patronok eltávolításakor és a zárószervezet felbontásakor. Kerülje a lézersugárnak való kitettséget.

PERICOLO - Emissioni di radiazioni laser invisibili durante la rimozione delle cartucce e del blocco. Evitare l'esposizione al raggio laser.

FARE - Usynlig laserstråling når kassetene tas ut og sperren er satt ut av spill. Unngå eksponering for laserstrålen.

NIEBEZPIECZEŃSTWO - niewidzialne promieniowanie laserowe podczas usuwania kaset i blokady. Należy unikać naświetlenia promieniami lasera.

ОПАСНО! Невидимое лазерное излучение при извлеченных картриджах и снятии блокировки. Избегайте воздействия лазерных лучей.

Pozor - Nebezpečenstvo neviditeľného laserového žiarenia pri odobratých kazetách a odblokovanej poistke. Nevystavujte sa lúčom.

PELIGRO: Se producen radiaciones láser invisibles al extraer los cartuchos con el interbloqueo desactivado. Evite la exposición al haz de láser.

FARA - Osynlig laserstrålning när patroner tas ur och spärrmekanismen är upphävd. Undvik exponering för laserstrålen.

危険 - 当移除碳粉盒及互锁失效时会产生看不见的激光辐射, 请避免暴露在激光光束下。

危険 - 移除碳粉匣與安全連續開關失效時會產生看不見的雷射輻射。請避免暴露在雷射光束下。

危険 - カートリッジが取り外され、内部ロックが無効になると、見えないレーザー光が放射されます。このレーザー光に当たらないようにしてください。

## Power consumption

### Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	520 W
Copy	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	540 W
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	30 W
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	12 W
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	5 W
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.5 W
Off	The product is plugged into an electrical outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

### Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the *Sleep Mode Timeout*.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	30
---	----

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 120 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

### Hibernate Mode

This product is designed with an ultra-low power operating mode called *Hibernate mode*. When operating in Hibernate Mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

The Hibernate mode can be entered in any of the following methods:

- Using the Hibernate Timeout
- Using the Schedule Power modes
- Using the Sleep/Hibernate button

Factory default Hibernate Timeout for this product in all countries or regions except for EU countries and Switzerland	Disabled
Factory default value for this product in EU countries or regions and Switzerland	3 days

The amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it enters Hibernate mode can be modified between one hour and one month.

### Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the electrical outlet.

### Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

### Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

### Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

## European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and the ecodesign of energy-related products.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

## Regulatory notices for telecommunication terminal equipment

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to products that contain telecommunication terminal equipment such as facsimile.

### Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrester in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrester is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

## **Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network**

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The terminus of an interface may consist of any combination of devices, subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five. The modem REN is located on the rear of the equipment on the product labeling.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrester in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrester is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

## **Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada**

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industrie Canada. Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) fournit une indication du nombre maximum de terminaux pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN du modem est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit située à l'arrière de l'équipement.

Les compagnies de téléphone constatent que les surtensions électriques, en particulier celles dues à la foudre, entraînent d'importants dégâts sur les terminaux privés connectés à des sources d'alimentation CA. Il s'agit-là d'un problème majeur d'échelle nationale. En conséquence, il vous est recommandé de brancher un parasurtenseur dans

la prise de courant à laquelle l'équipement est connecté. Utilisez un parasurtenseur répondant à des caractéristiques nominales satisfaisantes et certifié par le laboratoire d'assureurs UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), un autre laboratoire agréé de type NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) ou un organisme de certification agréé dans votre région ou pays. Ceci prévient tout endommagement de l'équipement causé par les orages et autres surtensions électriques.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

## Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom's 111 Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.

Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Telecom's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

## Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland. The filter must be used, as metering pulses are present on all analog telephone lines in Switzerland.

## Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (n° de référence Lexmark : 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse. Ce filtre doit être utilisé pour toute installation car ces impulsions existent sur toutes les lignes téléphoniques suisses.

## Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden. Die Verwendung des Filters ist obligatorisch, da in allen analogen Telefonleitungen in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte vorhanden sind.

## Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera. È necessario utilizzare il filtro poiché gli impulsi remoti sono presenti su tutte le linee analogiche in Svizzera.

## Notice to Users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

## Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

## Modular component notice

Wireless-equipped models contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark Regulatory Type/Model LEX-M01-005; FCC ID:IYLLEXM01005; IC:2376A-M01005

## Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The following notice is applicable if your printer has a wireless network card installed: The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

## Notice to users in Brazil

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário. (Res. ANATEL 282/2001).

## Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

## Taiwan NCC RF notice statement

### NCC型式認證設備注意事項 台灣低功率射頻電機設備之使用注意事項

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信規定作業之無線電信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

## Notice to users in the European Union

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ftigijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

## STATEMENT OF LIMITED WARRANTY FOR LEXMARK LASER PRINTERS, LEXMARK LED PRINTERS, AND LEXMARK MULTIFUNCTION LASER PRINTERS

### Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as “Remarketer.”

### Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

### Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed. Fuser Units, Transfer/Transport Units, Paper Feed items, if any, and any other items for which a Maintenance Kit is available are substantially consumed when the printer displays a “Life Warning” or “Scheduled Maintenance” message for such item.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

As part of your warranty service and/or replacement, Lexmark may update the firmware in your printer to the latest version. Firmware updates may modify printer settings and cause counterfeit and/or unauthorized products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces to stop working. Authorized use of genuine Lexmark products will not be impacted.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

### **Extent of limited warranty**

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- Modification or unauthorized attachments
- Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

**TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.**

### Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

### Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

# Index

## Numerics

- 250-sheet tray
  - installing 19
- 550-sheet tray
  - installing 19

## Symbols

- [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder. [25y.xx] 178
- [x]-page jam, clear standard bin. [20y.xx] 175
- [x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx] 179
- [x]-page jam, open front door. [20y.xx] 171
- [x]-page jam, open rear door. [20y.xx] 174
- [x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24y.xx] 177
- [x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [23y.xx] 176

## A

- Active NIC menu 108
- adapter plug 80
- address book button
  - printer control panel 13
- ADF
  - copying using 56
- adjusting printer display brightness 149
- adjusting Sleep mode 148
- adjusting toner darkness 51
- administrator settings
  - Embedded Web Server 165
- advanced duplex
  - copy options 67
- answering machine
  - setting up 73
- AppleTalk menu 113
- arrow buttons
  - printer control panel 13
- attaching cables 22
- available internal options 15
- avoiding jams 49
- avoiding paper jams 168

## B

- back button
  - printer control panel 13
- binding
  - fax options 92
- blocking junk faxes 89

## C

- cables
  - Ethernet 22
  - USB 22
- canceling
  - fax job 89
  - print job, from computer 54
- canceling a copy job from the printer control panel 65
- canceling a print job
  - from a computer 54
  - from the printer control panel 54
- canceling an e-mail 70
- cannot open Embedded Web Server 237
- card stock
  - loading, multipurpose feeder 35
  - tips 49
- Cartridge low [88.xy] 181
- Cartridge nearly low [88.xy] 181
- Cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy] 181
- Cartridge, imaging unit mismatch [41.xy] 181
- Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [paper orientation] 181
- Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 182
- Change [paper source] to [paper size] load [orientation] 182
- Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] load [orientation] 182
- checking an unresponsive printer 195
- checking status of parts and supplies 156
- checking the status of parts and supplies 156
- checking the virtual display using the Embedded Web Server 165
- cleaning
  - exterior of the printer 154
  - scanner glass 155
- cleaning the printer 154
- Close flatbed cover and load originals if restarting job [2yy.xx] 182
- Close front door 182
- collate
  - copy options 66
- collating copies 62
- Complex page, some data may not have printed [39] 183
- compressed images appear on prints 207
- confidential data
  - information on securing 153
- confidential jobs
  - modifying print settings 53
- confidential print jobs 52
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 53
  - printing from Windows 53
- configuration information
  - wireless network 26
- configurations
  - printer 10
- Configure MP menu 101
- configuring
  - supply notifications, imaging unit 166
  - supply notifications, maintenance kit 166
  - supply notifications, toner cartridge 166
- configuring e-mail settings 68
- configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server 166
- connecting to a wireless network using PBC, Push Button Configuration method 27
  - using PIN, Personal Identification Number method 27

- using the Embedded Web Server 28
- using wireless setup wizard 27
- conservation settings
  - brightness, adjusting 149
  - conserving supplies 146
  - Eco-Mode 147
  - Hibernate mode 149
  - Quiet mode 147
  - Schedule Power Modes 150
  - Sleep mode 148
- conserving supplies 146
- contacting customer support 238
- control panel, printer
  - indicator light 13
  - Sleep button light 13
- controller board
  - accessing 15
- copies
  - copy options 65
- copy from
  - copy options 65
- copy job
  - canceling 65
- copy options
  - advanced duplex 67
  - collate 66
  - copies 65
  - copy from 65
  - copy to 65
  - darkness 66
  - overlay 67
  - paper saver 67
  - scale 66
  - separator sheets 67
  - sides (duplex) 66
- copy quality
  - adjusting 61
- copy screen
  - content source 66
  - content type 66, 91
- Copy Settings menu 121
- copy to
  - copy options 65
- copy troubleshooting
  - copier does not respond 224
  - partial document or photo
    - copies 226
  - poor copy quality 225
  - poor scanned image quality 236
  - scanner unit does not
    - close 225, 235

- copying
  - adding an overlay message 64
  - adjusting quality 61
  - canceling a copy job from the
    - printer control panel 65
  - collating copies 62
  - enlarging 61
  - making a copy lighter or darker 61
  - multiple pages on one sheet 63
  - on both sides of the paper
    - (duplexing) 60
  - on letterhead 58
  - on transparencies 57
  - photos 57
  - placing separator sheets between
    - copies 63
  - quick copy 56
  - reducing 61
  - selecting a tray 59
  - to a different size 59
  - using the ADF 56
  - using the scanner glass 57
- creating a fax destination shortcut
  - using the Embedded Web Server 87
- creating an FTP shortcut
  - using the Embedded Web Server 93
- custom paper type
  - assigning 41
- custom paper type name
  - creating 40
- custom paper type names
  - assigning 40
- Custom Scan Sizes menu 106
- Custom Type [x]
  - assigning a paper type 41
- Custom Type [x] name
  - creating 40
- Custom Types menu 105
- customer support
  - contacting 238

**D**

- darkness
  - copy options 66
  - fax options 91
- date and time, fax
  - setting 85
- daylight savings time, faxing 85
- Default Source menu 98
- Defective flash detected [51] 183

- Digital Subscriber Line (DSL)
  - fax setup 77
- digital telephone service
  - fax setup 79
- display troubleshooting
  - printer display is blank 197
- display, printer control panel
  - adjusting brightness 149
- distinctive ring service
  - connecting to 84
- documents, printing
  - from Macintosh 51
  - from Windows 51
- DSL filter 77
- duplexing
  - copy jobs 60

**E**

- Eco-Mode setting 147
- Embedded Web Server
  - adjusting brightness 149
  - administrator settings 165
  - checking the status of parts 156
  - checking the status of
    - supplies 156
  - creating a fax destination
    - shortcut 87
  - creating an FTP shortcut 93
  - creating e-mail shortcuts 69
  - initial fax setup 72
  - modifying confidential print
    - settings 53
  - networking settings 165
  - problem accessing 237
  - setting up e-mail alerts 165
- Embedded Web Server
  - Administrator's Guide
    - where to find 153, 165
  - emission
    - notices 241, 242, 245, 246, 249, 250, 251
  - enlarging a copy 61
  - envelopes
    - loading, multipurpose feeder 35
    - tips on using 48
  - environmental settings
    - conserving supplies 146
    - Eco-Mode 147
    - Hibernate mode 149
    - printer display brightness,
      - adjusting 149
    - Quiet mode 147

- Schedule Power Modes 150
- Sleep mode 148
- erasing non-volatile memory 152
- erasing volatile memory 152
- Error reading USB drive. Remove USB. 183
- Error reading USB hub. Remove hub. 183
- Ethernet network
  - preparing to set up for Ethernet printing 24
- Ethernet network setup
  - using Macintosh 25
  - using Windows 25
- Ethernet networking
  - Macintosh 25
  - Windows 25
- Ethernet port 22
- Ethernet setup
  - preparing for an 24
- EXT ports 22
- exterior of the printer
  - cleaning 154
- e-mail
  - canceling 70
- e-mail alerts
  - low supply levels 165
  - paper jam 165
  - setting up 165
- e-mail function
  - setting up 68
- E-mail Settings menu 130
- e-mail shortcuts, creating
  - using the Embedded Web Server 69
- e-mail, sending
  - using a shortcut number 69
  - using the address book 69
- e-mailing
  - configuring e-mail settings 68
  - creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 69
  - setting up e-mail function 68
  - using a shortcut number 69
  - using the address book 69

## F

- factory defaults, restoring 167
- fax
  - options 91, 92
  - sending 86

- fax button
  - printer control panel 13
- fax connection
  - connecting to a distinctive ring service 84
- fax function
  - setting up 227
- fax function is not set up 227
- fax log
  - viewing 89
- Fax memory full 183
- Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu 124
- fax options
  - binding 92
  - darkness 91
  - orientation 92
  - resolution 91
- Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator. 183
- fax ports 22
- fax screen
  - content source 92
- Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator. 183
- fax setup
  - country- or region-specific 80
  - digital telephone service 79
  - DSL connection 77
  - standard telephone line connection 73
  - VoIP 78
- Fax Station Name not set up. Contact system administrator. 184
- Fax Station Number not set up. Contact system administrator. 184
- fax troubleshooting
  - caller ID is not shown 228
  - can receive but not send faxes 232
  - can send but not receive faxes 231
  - cannot send or receive a fax 229
  - received fax has poor print quality 233
- fax, sending
  - using shortcuts 86
  - using the address book 87
  - using the printer control panel 85
- faxing
  - blocking junk faxes 89
  - canceling a fax job 89, 90

- changing resolution 88
- configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time 85
- creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 87
- fax setup 72
- forwarding faxes 90
- holding faxes 90
- making a fax lighter or darker 88
- sending a fax at a scheduled time 87
- setting the date and time 85
- setting the fax number or station number 84
- setting the outgoing fax name or station name 84
- viewing a fax log 89
- FCC notices 241, 246, 249
- finding more information about the printer 8
- Finishing menu 137
- font sample list
  - printing 54
- forwarding faxes 90
- FTP address, scanning to
  - using a shortcut 94
- FTP Settings menu 133

## G

- General Settings menu 116
- green settings
  - Eco-Mode 147
  - Hibernate mode 149
  - Quiet mode 147
  - Schedule Power Modes 150

## H

- held jobs 52
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 53
  - printing from Windows 53
- Help menu 144
- Hibernate mode
  - using 149
- holding faxes 90
- home button
  - printer control panel 13
- HTML menu 143

## I

- Image menu 144

- imaging unit
    - ordering 158
    - replacing 161
  - Imaging unit low [84.xy] 184
  - Imaging unit nearly low [84.xy] 184
  - Imaging unit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy] 184
  - Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34] 184
  - indicator light
    - printer control panel 13
  - initial fax setup 72
    - using the Embedded Web Server 72
  - installing an optional card 17
  - installing options
    - order of installation 19
  - installing printer on a network
    - Ethernet networking 25
  - installing printer software 23
    - adding options 23
  - installing the 250-sheet tray 19
  - installing the 550-sheet tray 19
  - Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37] 185
  - Insufficient memory to collate job [37] 185
  - Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35] 185
  - Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37] 185
  - Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37] 185
  - IPv6 menu 111
- J**
- jams
    - accessing 169
    - avoiding 168
    - understanding messages 169
  - jams, clearing
    - in automatic document feeder top cover 179
    - in duplex area 176
    - in front door 171
    - in manual feeder 178
    - in rear door 174
    - in standard bin 175
    - in tray [x] 177
- K**
- keypad
    - printer control panel 13
- L**
- labels, paper
    - tips 48
  - letterhead
    - copying on 58
    - loading, multipurpose feeder 35
    - tips on using 47
  - line filter 77
  - LINE ports 22
  - linking trays 39
    - assigning custom paper type names 40
  - Load [paper source] with [custom string] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load [paper source] with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load [paper source] with [paper size] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load manual feeder with [custom string] [paper orientation] 186
  - Load manual feeder with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 186
  - Load manual feeder with [paper size] [paper orientation] 186
  - Load manual feeder with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 186
  - loading
    - multipurpose feeder 35
    - trays 30
  - loading the optional tray 30
  - loading the standard tray 30
- M**
- maintenance kit
    - ordering 158
  - Maintenance kit low [80.xy] 188
  - Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy] 188
  - Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy] 188
  - memory
    - types installed on printer 152
  - Memory full [38] 188
  - Memory full, cannot print faxes 188
  - Memory full, cannot send faxes 188
  - menu settings page
    - printing 29
  - menus
    - Active NIC 108
    - AppleTalk 113
    - Configure MP 101
    - Copy Settings 121
    - Custom Scan Sizes 106
    - Custom Types 105
    - Default Source 98
    - E-mail Settings 130
    - Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) 124
    - Finishing 137
    - FTP Settings 133
    - General Settings 116
    - Help 144
    - HTML 143
    - Image 144
    - IPv6 111
    - list of 97
    - Network [x] 108
    - Network Card 109
    - Network Reports 109
    - Paper Loading 104
    - Paper Size/Type 98
    - Paper Texture 101
    - Paper Weight 103
    - PCL Emul 140
    - PDF 140
    - Quality 139
    - Reports 107
    - Security Audit Log 114
    - Set Date and Time 115
    - Setup 136
    - SMTP Setup menu 113
    - Standard Network 108
    - Substitute Size 101
    - TCP/IP 110
    - Universal Setup 106
    - Wireless 112
    - XPS 140
  - menus list 97
  - moving the printer 9, 163, 164
  - multiple pages on one sheet 63
  - multipurpose feeder
    - loading 35

**N**

Network [x] menu 108  
 Network [x] software error [54] 189  
 Network Card menu 109  
 Network Reports menu 109  
 network settings  
   Embedded Web Server 165  
 network setup page  
   printing 29  
 Networking Guide  
   where to find 165  
 No analog phone line connected to modem, fax is disabled. 189  
 noise emission levels 242  
 noise, printer  
   reducing 147  
 Non-Lexmark [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy] 189  
 non-volatile memory 152  
   erasing 152  
 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52] 189  
 notices 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251  
 number of remaining pages  
   estimate 156

**O**

optional card  
   installing 17  
 optional tray  
   loading 30  
 options  
   250-sheet tray, installing 19  
   550-sheet tray, installing 19  
   fax 91, 92  
   memory cards 15  
   updating in printer driver 23  
 ordering  
   imaging unit 158  
   maintenance kit 158  
 ordering supplies  
   toner cartridges 157  
 orientation  
   fax options 92  
 overlay  
   copy options 67  
 overlay message, adding  
   copying 64

**P**

paper  
   characteristics 42  
   letterhead 43  
   loading, multipurpose feeder 35  
   preprinted forms 43  
   recycled 44, 146  
   selecting 43  
   setting size 30  
   setting type 30  
   storing 49  
   unacceptable 43  
   Universal size setting 30  
 paper feed troubleshooting  
   message remains after jam is cleared 200  
 paper jams  
   avoiding 168  
 paper jams, clearing  
   in automatic document feeder top cover 179  
   in duplex area 176  
   in front door 171  
   in manual feeder 178  
   in rear door 174  
   in standard bin 175  
   in tray [x] 177  
 paper labels  
   loading, multipurpose feeder 35  
 Paper Loading menu 104  
 paper messages  
   [x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [23y.xx] 176  
 paper saver  
   copy options 67  
 Paper Size/Type menu 98  
 paper sizes  
   supported 45  
 Paper Texture menu 101  
 paper types  
   supported by printer 46  
   where to load 46  
 Paper Weight menu 103  
 paper weights  
   supported by printer 46  
 parts  
   checking status 156  
   checking, using the Embedded Web Server 156  
   using genuine Lexmark 157  
 parts and supplies, status of  
   checking, on printer control panel 156  
 PCL Emul menu 140  
 PDF menu 140  
 Personal Identification Number method  
   using 27  
 phone splitter 78  
 photos  
   copying 57  
 placing separator sheets between copies 63  
 preparing to set up the printer on an Ethernet network 24  
 print irregularities 211  
 print job  
   canceling from the printer control panel 54  
   canceling, from computer 54  
 print quality  
   cleaning the scanner glass 155  
 print quality troubleshooting  
   blank pages 215  
   characters have jagged edges 206  
   clipped pages or images 206  
   compressed images appear on prints 207  
   gray background on prints 208  
   horizontal voids appear on prints 209  
   print irregularities 211  
   print is too dark 213  
   print is too light 214  
   printer is printing solid black pages 216  
   repeating print defects appear on prints 217  
   shadow images appear on prints 218  
   skewed print 218  
   streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 219  
   streaked vertical lines 220  
   toner fog or background shading 221  
   toner rubs off 222  
   toner specks appear on prints 222  
   transparency print quality is poor 222  
   uneven print density 223  
   white streaks 223

- print troubleshooting
  - incorrect characters print 200
  - incorrect margins on prints 210
  - jammed pages are not reprinted 199
  - job prints from wrong tray 200
  - job prints on wrong paper 200
  - jobs do not print 202
  - Large jobs do not collate 201
  - multiple-language PDF files do not print 202
  - paper curl 211
  - paper frequently jams 199
  - print job takes longer than expected 203
  - tray linking does not work 205
  - unexpected page breaks occur 205
- printer
  - minimum clearances 9
  - moving 9, 163, 164
  - selecting a location 9
  - shipping 164
- printer configurations 10
  - basic model 10
  - configured model 10
- printer control panel
  - adjusting brightness 149
  - factory defaults, restoring 167
  - indicator light 13
  - Sleep button light 13
  - using 13
- printer control panel, virtual display
  - using the Embedded Web Server 165
- Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete. 190
- printer information
  - where to find 8
- printer is printing blank pages 215
- printer messages
  - [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder. [25y.xx] 178
  - [x]-page jam, clear standard bin. [20y.xx] 175
  - [x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx] 179
  - [x]-page jam, open front door. [20y.xx] 171
  - [x]-page jam, open rear door. [20y.xx] 174
  - [x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24y.xx] 177
  - Cartridge low [88.xy] 181
  - Cartridge nearly low [88.xy] 181
  - Cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy] 181
  - Cartridge, imaging unit mismatch [41.xy] 181
  - Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [paper orientation] 181
  - Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 182
  - Change [paper source] to [paper size] load [orientation] 182
  - Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] load [orientation] 182
  - Close flatbed cover and load originals if restarting job [2yy.xx] 182
  - Close front door 182
  - Complex page, some data may not have printed [39] 183
  - Defective flash detected [51] 183
  - Error reading USB drive. Remove USB. 183
  - Error reading USB hub. Remove hub. 183
  - Fax memory full 183
  - Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator. 183
  - Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator. 183
  - Fax Station Name not set up. Contact system administrator. 184
  - Fax Station Number not set up. Contact system administrator. 184
  - Imaging unit low [84.xy] 184
  - Imaging unit nearly low [84.xy] 184
  - Imaging unit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy] 184
  - Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34] 184
  - Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37] 185
  - Insufficient memory to collate job [37] 185
  - Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35] 185
  - Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37] 185
  - Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37] 185
  - Load [paper source] with [custom string] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load [paper source] with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load [paper source] with [paper size] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 187
  - Load manual feeder with [custom string] [paper orientation] 186
  - Load manual feeder with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 186
  - Load manual feeder with [paper size] [paper orientation] 186
  - Load manual feeder with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 186
  - Maintenance kit low [80.xy] 188
  - Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy] 188
  - Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy] 188
  - Memory full [38] 188
  - Memory full, cannot print faxes 188
  - Memory full, cannot send faxes 188
  - Network [x] software error [54] 189
  - No analog phone line connected to modem, fax is disabled. 189
  - Non-Lexmark [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy] 189
  - Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52] 189

- Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete. 190
  - Reinstall missing or unresponsive cartridge [31.xy] 190
  - Reinstall missing or unresponsive imaging unit [31.xy] 190
  - Remove paper from standard output bin 190
  - Replace all originals if restarting job. 190
  - Replace cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy] 191
  - Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy] 191
  - Replace defective imaging unit [31.xy] 191
  - Replace imaging unit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy] 191
  - Replace jammed originals if restarting job. 192
  - Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy] 192
  - Replace unsupported cartridge [32.xy] 192
  - Replace unsupported imaging unit [32.xy] 192
  - Scanner automatic feeder cover open 192
  - Scanner disabled by admin [840.01] 192
  - Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. [840.02] 193
  - Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 193
  - Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 193
  - Serial option [x] error [54] 193
  - SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator. 193, 195
  - Standard network software error [54] 193
  - Standard USB port disabled [56] 194
  - Supply needed to complete job 194
  - Too many flash options installed [58] 194
  - Too many trays attached [58] 194
  - Unformatted flash detected [53] 194
  - Unsupported USB hub, please remove 183
  - printer options troubleshooting
    - internal option is not detected 197
    - tray problems 198
  - printer problems, solving basic 195
  - printer security information on 153
  - printer software installing 23
  - printing
    - font sample list 54
    - from Macintosh 51
    - from Windows 51
    - menu settings page 29
    - network setup page 29
    - printing a document 51
    - printing a network setup page 29
    - printing confidential and other held jobs
      - from a Macintosh computer 53
      - from Windows 53
    - printing slows down 204
  - publications
    - where to find 8
  - Push Button Configuration method using 27
- Q**
- Quality menu 139
  - Quiet mode 147
- R**
- recycled paper using 44, 146
  - recycling
    - Lexmark packaging 151
    - Lexmark products 150
    - toner cartridges 151
  - reducing a copy 61
  - reducing noise 147
  - Reinstall missing or unresponsive cartridge [31.xy] 190
  - Reinstall missing or unresponsive imaging unit [31.xy] 190
  - Remove paper from standard output bin 190
  - repeat print jobs 52
    - printing from a Macintosh computer 53
    - printing from Windows 53
  - repeating print defects appear on prints 217
  - Replace all originals if restarting job. 190
  - Replace cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy] 191
  - Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy] 191
  - Replace defective imaging unit [31.xy] 191
  - Replace imaging unit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy] 191
  - Replace jammed originals if restarting job. 192
  - Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy] 192
  - Replace unsupported cartridge [32.xy] 192
  - Replace unsupported imaging unit [32.xy] 192
  - replacing
    - imaging unit 161
    - toner cartridge 159
  - reports
    - viewing 165
  - Reports menu 107
  - reserve print jobs 52
    - printing from a Macintosh computer 53
    - printing from Windows 53
  - reset button
    - printer control panel 13
  - resolution
    - fax options 91
  - resolution, fax
    - changing 88
  - RJ-11 adapter 80
- S**
- safety information 6, 7
  - scale
    - copy options 66
  - scan troubleshooting
    - partial document or photo scans 237
    - scan job was not successful 235

- scanner unit does not
    - close 225, 235
  - scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 235
  - scanner
    - Automatic document feeder (ADF) 12
    - functions 11
    - scanner glass 12
  - Scanner automatic feeder cover open 192
  - Scanner disabled by admin [840.01] 192
  - Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. [840.02] 193
  - scanner glass
    - cleaning 155
    - copying using 57
  - Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 193
  - Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 193
  - scanning
    - quick copy 56
    - to a computer 95
    - using the address book 94
  - scanning to a computer 95
  - scanning to an FTP address
    - creating shortcuts using the computer 93
    - using a shortcut 94
  - scanning, FTP address
    - using the address book 94
  - Schedule Power Modes
    - using 150
  - security
    - modifying confidential print settings 53
  - Security Audit Log menu 114
  - security slot 22
  - security Web page
    - where to find 153
  - select button
    - printer control panel 13
  - selecting a location for the printer 9
  - selecting paper 43
  - sending a fax 86
  - sending fax
    - using shortcuts 86
    - using the address book 87
    - using the printer control panel 85
  - sending fax at a scheduled time 87
  - separator pad
    - ordering 158
  - separator sheets
    - copy options 67
  - Serial option [x] error [54] 193
  - Set Date and Time menu 115
  - setting
    - paper size 30
    - paper type 30
    - TCP/IP address 110
  - setting the fax number or station number 84
  - setting the outgoing fax name or station name 84
  - setting the Universal paper size 30
  - setting up e-mail alerts 165
  - setting up fax
    - country- or region-specific 80
    - digital telephone service 79
    - DSL connection 77
    - standard telephone line connection 73
    - VoIP connection 78
  - setting up fax function 227
  - setting up the printer
    - on an Ethernet network (Macintosh only) 25
    - on an Ethernet network (Windows only) 25
  - Setup menu 136
  - shipping the printer 164
  - shortcuts, creating
    - e-mail 69
    - fax destination 87
    - FTP destination 93
  - sides (duplex)
    - copy options 66
  - sleep button
    - printer control panel 13
  - Sleep mode
    - adjusting 148
  - SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator. 193, 195
  - SMTP Setup menu 113
  - Standard Network menu 108
  - Standard network software error [54] 193
  - standard tray
    - loading 30
  - Standard USB port disabled [56] 194
  - start button
    - printer control panel 13
  - statement of volatility 152
  - status of parts and supplies
    - checking 156
  - stop or cancel button
    - printer control panel 13
  - storing
    - paper 49
    - supplies 159
  - storing print jobs 52
  - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 219
  - streaked vertical lines appear on prints 220
  - streaks appear 223
  - Substitute Size menu 101
  - supplies
    - checking status 156
    - checking, using the Embedded Web Server 156
    - conserving 146
    - storing 159
    - using genuine Lexmark 157
    - using recycled paper 146
  - supplies, ordering
    - imaging unit 158
    - maintenance kit 158
    - separator pad 158
    - toner cartridges 157
  - Supply needed to complete job 194
  - supply notifications
    - configuring 166
  - supported paper sizes 45
- ## T
- TCP/IP menu 110
  - telecommunication
    - notices 246, 247, 248, 249
  - the scanner does not respond 234
  - tips
    - card stock 49
    - labels, paper 48
    - letterhead 47
    - on using envelopes 48
    - transparencies 48
  - tips on using envelopes 48
  - toner cartridge
    - replacing 159

- toner cartridges
    - ordering 157
    - recycling 151
  - toner darkness
    - adjusting 51
  - Too many flash options installed [58] 194
  - Too many trays attached [58] 194
  - transparencies
    - copying on 57
    - loading, multipurpose feeder 35
    - tips 48
  - trays
    - linking 39
    - loading 30
    - unlinking 39
  - troubleshooting
    - cannot open Embedded Web Server 237
    - checking an unresponsive printer 195
    - contacting customer support 238
    - fax function is not set up 227
    - solving basic printer problems 195
    - the scanner does not respond 234
  - troubleshooting, copy
    - copier does not respond 224
    - partial document or photo copies 226
    - poor copy quality 225
    - poor scanned image quality 236
    - scanner unit does not close 225, 235
  - troubleshooting, display
    - printer display is blank 197
  - troubleshooting, fax
    - caller ID is not shown 228
    - can receive but not send faxes 232
    - can send but not receive faxes 231
    - cannot send or receive a fax 229
    - received fax has poor print quality 233
  - troubleshooting, paper feed
    - message remains after jam is cleared 200
  - troubleshooting, print
    - incorrect characters print 200
    - incorrect margins on prints 210
  - troubleshooting, print quality
    - blank pages 215
    - characters have jagged edges 206
    - clipped pages or images 206
    - compressed images appear on prints 207
    - gray background on prints 208
    - horizontal voids appear on prints 209
    - print irregularities 211
    - print is too dark 213
    - print is too light 214
    - printer is printing solid black pages 216
    - repeating print defects appear on prints 217
    - shadow images appear on prints 218
    - skewed print 218
    - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 219
    - streaked vertical lines 220
    - toner fog or background shading 221
    - toner rubs off 222
    - toner specks appear on prints 222
    - transparency print quality is poor 222
    - uneven print density 223
    - white streaks on a page 223
  - troubleshooting, printer options
    - internal option is not detected 197
    - tray problems 198
  - troubleshooting, printing
    - printing slows down 204
  - troubleshooting, scan
    - partial document or photo scans 237
    - scan job was not successful 235
    - scanner unit does not close 225, 235
    - scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 235
- ## U
- unacceptable paper 43
  - uneven print density 223
  - Unformatted flash detected [53] 194
  - Universal paper size setting 30
  - Universal Setup menu 106
  - unlinking trays 39
  - Unsupported USB hub, please remove 183
  - updating options in printer driver 23
  - USB port 22
  - using Hibernate mode 149
  - using Schedule Power Modes 150
  - using shortcuts
    - sending fax 86
  - using the address book
    - sending fax 87
- ## V
- verify print jobs 52
    - printing from a Macintosh computer 53
    - printing from Windows 53
  - vertical voids appear 223
  - viewing
    - reports 165
  - viewing a fax log 89
  - virtual display
    - checking, using Embedded Web Server 165
  - voice mail
    - setting up 73
  - Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)
    - fax setup 78
  - voids appear 223
  - VoIP adapter 78
  - volatile memory 152
    - erasing 152

volatility  
statement of 152

## **W**

Wireless menu 112  
wireless network  
configuration information 26  
wireless network setup  
using the Embedded Web  
Server 28  
wireless setup wizard  
using 27

## **X**

XPS menu 140